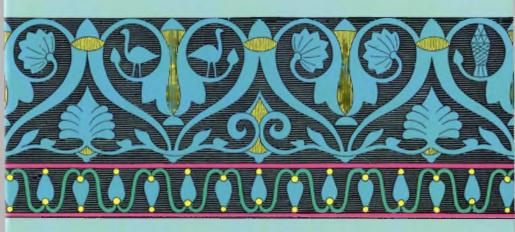


Lewis V. Thomas

# ELEMENTARY TURKISH

Revised and Edited by Norman Itzkowitz



# Editor's Note

LEWIS VICTOR THOMAS was born in Chicago, February 27, 1914, and died in Princeton, October 21, 1965. He grew up in Indiana and was proud of his Hoosier background. He was trained as a classicist and orientalist at the University of Chicago and its Oriental Institute. Shortly after World War II he took his Ph.D. under Paul Wittek at Brussels. In 1947 he joined the Princeton faculty.

An accomplished teacher, Thomas made his seminars in Ottoman history and his courses in the Turkish language a training ground for many of America's growing group of Ottomanists and Turkish specialists. As a teacher he was keenly aware of the lack of adequate teaching materials. During his last year Thomas was hard at work preparing this grammar for publication, but his illness prevented him from completing the project to which he had devoted so much effort. He asked me to see the book through to publication, and I have made the necessary revisions with the kind assistance of Mr. Salih Necdet Ok, whose help I gratefully acknowledge.

In the process of editing the manuscript I have preserved almost all of Thomas's organization and method. This book has helped many Princeton students to learn modern Turkish quickly. It is hoped that it will now enable even more students to achieve that goal and that through them Lewis V. Thomas's influence will continue in the field of Turkish studies that he served so well.

Norman Itzkowitz

# Preface

THE PURPOSE of this book is to enable English-speaking students to recognize, understand, and begin to use the basic patterns of modern standard Turkish. These basic patterns are, insofar as possible, presented one by one in a sequence that experience has shown to yield maximum results for English speakers.

The exercises are intended to present the student with the elements of Turkish in a form which he can begin to use. New vocabulary occurring in the exercises can be located in the Glossary.

An effort has been made to limit the material presented to those forms and patterns that in fact make up elementary standard modern Turkish. My thanks are due to the generations of Princeton University students who have uncomplainingly used the book in its successive mimeographed editions and in so doing have helped me learn what elementary Turkish is. Thanks are also due to my colleagues Professor Norman Itzkowitz and Mr. Cevat Erder and to a valiant typist, Mrs. Elsa Washington.

Lewis V. Thomas

# Contents

#### **LESSONS**

| I | The Alphabet. 'Soft g.' Doubled Consonants. The Circumflex Accent. Spelling. Syllabification. Punctuation  | 3  |
|---|--|----|
| 2 | Cardinal Numbers. 'One Half.' Kaç, Çok, and Az. Parça and Tane   | 13 |
| 3 | Position of Adjectives. Indefinite Article with Adjectives. Predicate Modifiers  | 18 |
| 4 | Definite Article. Adjective and Noun. Agglutination. Vowel Harmony. The Plural   | 21 |
| 5 | Common Infinitive. Variable Consonants. Past Definite Verb.<br>Agreement of Subject and Verb   | 25 |
| 6 | Verbs of the Type Gitmek (Gider). The Objective Definite. Variable Consonants Followed by Objective Definite. Doubled Consonants Followed by Objective Definite. 'Ayn Followed by Objective Definite. Final k Followed by Objective Definite. Nouns of the Type Oğul Followed by Objective Definite                | 35 |
| 7 | Personal Pronouns. Interrogative Pronouns. Demonstratives. The Imperative. Word Order  | 42 |
| 8 | Nere*, Bura*, Ora*. Dative Suffix -(y) V <sup>2</sup> . Locative Suffix -t/d V <sup>2</sup> . Ablative Suffix -t/d V <sup>2</sup> n. Dative, Locative, and Ablative Forms of Nere*, Bura*, Ora*, the Personal Pronouns, the Interrogatives, and the Demonstratives. Fractions. Calendar. The Word d V <sup>2</sup> | 47 |
| 9 | Negative Verb. Interrogative Particle (m V <sup>4</sup> ). Negative Interrogative. Negative Expressions  | 54 |

| 10 | The Possessive Construction. Possessive Definite Suffix -(n) V <sup>4</sup> n. Possessive Suffixes. The Possessive Construction, Types I and II. Personal Pronouns as Members of Possessive Constructions. Possessive Complexes. The Word Sahip in Possessive Constructions. Suffixes added to a Possessive Suffix. Kendi | 60         |
|----|---|------------|
| 11 | Infinitives. General Verbs  | 72         |
| 12 | Past General Verbs. Future Verbs. Adverbs. Comparison. Emphatics. The Suffix -ç/c V <sup>2</sup>  | <b>7</b> 9 |
| 13 | Postpositions. Expressions of Location  | 86         |
| 14 | The Verb 'to Be.' Var and yok. The Resumptive Question  | 93         |
| 15 | The Suffixes -1 $V^4$ , -s $V^4$ z, and -1 $V^4$ k. Past Indefinite, Past Narrative, and Past Perfect Verb Forms  | 99         |
| 16 | The Partitive. Participles. Gerund -t/d V <sup>4</sup> k. Indirect Discourse. Relative Gerundive and Adverb   | 104        |
| 17 | -ki. Ki. Çünkü. The Professional Doer. The Habitual Doer. Diminutives. Noun of Manner   | III        |
| 18 | Progressive Verb Forms. Common Infinitive plus the Locative with 'to Be.' Ordinals and Distributives. Gerundive in -(y) V <sup>2</sup>  | 117        |
| 19 | 'To Be Able'  | 123        |
| 20 | Auxiliary Verb. Optative-Subjunctive. Necessity. Condition  | 128        |
| 21 | Passive Verbs. The Agent. Causative, Reflexive, and Mutual Verbs  | 135        |
| 22 | Abbreviating Verb Forms. Attendant Circumstances. Verb Form in -(y) $V^4$ n c $V^2$ . Verb Form in -t/d $V^4$ k ç $V^2$   | 141        |
| 23 | Statement on Verb Forms. True and Untrue Conditions   | 148        |
| ΚE | Y TO EXERCISES  | 152        |
| vo | CARIII ADV  | 176        |

# Lesson 1

The Alphabet. 'Soft g.' Doubled Consonants.

The Circumflex Accent. Spelling.

Syllabification. Punctuation

# 1. The alphabet

| LETTER |   | NAME | APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION |
|--------|---|------|---------------------------|
| Α      | a | a    | as u in sun               |
| В      | b | be   | as in English             |
| C      | С | ce   | as j in <i>jump</i>       |
| Ç      | ç | çe   | as ch in church           |
| D      | d | de   | as in English             |
| E      | e | e    | as in <i>fed</i>          |
| F      | f | fe   | as in English             |
| G      | g | ge   | as in <i>go</i>           |

| LETTER |   | NAME                   | APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION                          |
|--------|---|------------------------|--|
| Ğ      | ğ | yumuşak ge<br>(soft g) | as y in yet (See the note in Lesson 1, section 2.) |
| Н      | h | he                     | as in head   |
| I      | 1 | 1                      | as the second vowel in nation                      |
| İ      | i | i                      | as in bit  |
| J      | j | je                     | as s in measure                                    |
| K      | k | ke                     | as in king   |
| L      | 1 | le                     | as in English                                      |
| M      | m | me                     | as in English                                      |
| N      | n | ne                     | as in English                                      |
| O      | 0 | O                      | as o in falsetto                                   |
| Ö      | ö | ö                      | as eu in French peu                                |
| P      | p | pe                     | as in English                                      |
| R      | r | ге                     | as in rock   |
| S      | S | se                     | as in sit  |
| Ş      | ş | şe                     | as sh in shoe                                      |
| T      | t | te                     | as in English                                      |
| U      | u | u                      | as u in pull                                       |
| Ü      | ü | ü                      | as ü in <i>über</i>                                |
| V      | v | ve                     | as in English                                      |
| Y      | у | ye                     | as in yellow                                       |
| Z      | Z | ze                     | as in English                                      |

In general, stress tends to be placed on the last syllable in a word.

### 2. 'Soft g'

G, g (yumuşak ge 'soft g'). This letter never begins a word. When it immediately follows a back vowel, a vowel formed in the back of the mouth (a, i, o, u): see Lesson 4, section 4), its sound resembles the glide one hears between the words 'go on' or between the words 'go over' when either of these pairs of words is slurred (as in agac 'tree'). When yumuşak ge immediately follows a front vowel, a vowel formed in the front of the mouth (e, i, o, u): see Lesson 4), its sound is approximately that of g in 'yet' (as in diger 'other').

# 3. Doubled consonants

The sound of a doubled consonant is prolonged well beyond that of the same consonant when single.

elli fifty eli the hand (objective)

### 4. The circumflex accent

The circumflex accent (^) may stand over the vowels a, i, and u ( $\hat{a}$ ,  $\hat{i}$ ,  $\hat{u}$ ). It has two distinct functions.

a. Standing over the letter a which is preceded by g, k, or  $l(g\hat{a}, k\hat{a}, l\hat{a})$ , the circumflex indicates that a y sound is to be pronounced between the consonant and the following a. In the syllable  $l\hat{a}$ , the y sound is fainter than in the syllables  $g\hat{a}$  and  $k\hat{a}$ .

gâvur heathen
kâr profit (compare kar 'snow')
lâle tulip

b. Except in the syllables  $g\hat{a}$ ,  $k\hat{a}$ , and  $l\hat{a}$ , the circumflex indicates that the vowel sound is to be prolonged. This is the case in the many (originally Arabic) adjectives ending in  $\hat{i}$ .

ŞamîDamascene (Şam 'Damascus')LübnanîLebanese (Lübnan 'the Lebanon')millînationaledebîliteraryiktisadîeconomic, economical

Sometimes the circumflex is used to distinguish between two words which, without it, would be spelled and pronounced identically.

Ali proper name (of a man) ali lofty, sublime

Occasionally a word beginning with ga, ka, or la has a long vowel in the first syllable but does not have in that syllable the y sound which the use of a circumflex  $(g\hat{a}, k\hat{a}, l\hat{a})$  would indicate. This may be shown by doubling the a, e.g. kaatil 'murderer.' Compare katil 'murder.'

#### 5. Spelling

Turkish spelling is phonetic, the same letter always indicating the same sound. Words borrowed from other languages are frequently spelled out phonetically.

Sevrole Chevrolet Cörcil Churchill

Note: Any sequence of vowel immediately followed by vowel is to be pronounced with a full stop between the two vowels. (The use of *aa* to indicate

long a in a word like kaatil 'murderer' [see above, section 4b] is the sole exception to this rule.) Words containing the sequence vowel-vowel are always of non-Turkish origin. Some Turkish writers and presses use an apostrophe to show the full stop between the two vowels, but this is now very rare. The stop is always to be made, whether an apostrophe is used or not.

saat or sa'at hour, time: watch, clock Sait or Sa'it proper name (of a man)

(For other uses of the apostrophe, see Lesson 4.)

#### 6. Syllabification

Turkish admits six syllable patterns (V = vowel; C = consonant).

| V    | 0    | he, she, it;         |
|------|------|----------------------|
|      |      | that (demonstrative) |
| VC   | ak   | white                |
| CV   | ve   | and                  |
| CVC  | dağ  | mountain             |
| VCC  | üst  | top                  |
| CVCC | genç | young                |

Each syllable begins with a single vowel or with a single consonant. Borrowed words which begin with two consonants may undergo one of two changes.

a. A vowel is inserted between the two initial consonants

kıral king

b. A vowel is prefixed to the first consonant.

ispirto spirits, alcohol

c. With some borrowings, however, this does not occur.

kredi credit

#### 7. Punctuation

Turkey's authors, editors, and publishers have not yet standardized punctuation. The period and question mark are ordinarily used as they are in English. A comma often indicates the end of the subject. Direct quotations may be shown by single or double quotation marks, by continental quotation marks, by dashes, or even by parentheses. Frequently, only the beginning of a quotation is shown. Often, a quotation is not indicated at all.

# Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud.

| A. Practice al | oud.              |            |                     |
|----------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------|
| anne           | mother            | dört beş   | four (or) five      |
| baba           | father            | dört beş   | four (or) five      |
| altı           | six               | çocuk      | children            |
| kaç?           | how much?         | ev         | house               |
|                | how many?         | erken      | early               |
| altı ağaç      | six trees         | fena       | bad                 |
| kaç ağaç?      | how many trees?   | fincan     | cup                 |
| bir            | one; a, an        | fil        | elephant            |
| beş            | five              | hafta      | week                |
| ben            | I                 | kaç hafta? | how many weeks?     |
| büyük          | big, large, great | bir fincan | one cup; a cup      |
| balık          | fish              | büyük cami | big mosque          |
| beş balık      | five fish         | fena fil   | bad elephant        |
| cadde          | street, avenue    | gün        | day                 |
| cami           | mosque            | göl        | lake                |
| sözcü          | spokesman         | geniş      | wide                |
| gece           | night             | göz        | eye                 |
| kaç gece?      | how many nights?  | fena gün   | bad day             |
| beş cadde      | five streets      | büyük göl  | big lake            |
| bir gece       | one night; a      | oğul       | son                 |
|                | night             | yağ        | grease,             |
| çocuk          | child (male or    |            | (cooking) fat,      |
|                | female)           |            | (vegetable) oil     |
| büyük çocuk    | big child, boy    | çok yağ    | lots of grease      |
| çok            | much, many,       | diğer      | (the) other         |
|                | very              | diğer göz  | (the) other eye     |
| çok büyük      | very big          | eğer       | if                  |
| çok gece       | many nights       | eğer ben   | if I                |
| güç            | difficult         | bahçe      | garden, yard        |
| geç            | late              | sabah      | morning             |
| dört           | four              | kahve      | coffee, coffeehouse |
| dokuz          | nine              | kaşık      | spoon               |
| doksan         | ninety            | şeker      | sugar               |
| diş            | tooth             | bir fincan | one cup of coffee,  |
| dokuz diş      | nine teeth        | kahve      | a cup of coffee     |
| doksan gece    | ninety nights     | kaç kaşık  | how many spoons     |
| çok cami       | many mosques      | şeker?     | of sugar?           |
|                |                   |            |                     |

| dokuz kaşık | nine spoons                                | meyva          | fruit                                       |
|-------------|--|----------------|---|
| iki         | two  | çok meyva      | much fruit,                                 |
| iyi         | good                                       |                | lots of fruit                               |
| iyi gün     | good day                                   | et             | meat  |
| fena gün    | bad day                                    | ekmek          | bread                                       |
| biz         | we   | çok ekmek      | much bread                                  |
| siz         | you (polite<br>singular,<br>normal plural) | bir ekmek      | one (a) bread<br>(i.e., a loaf of<br>bread) |
| altmış      | sixty                                      | sen            | you (familiar                               |
| hayır       | no (opposite of                            |                | singular)                                   |
|             | 'yes')                                     | onlar          | they  |
| kırk        | forty                                      | limon          | lemon                                       |
| kısa        | short                                      | çok limon      | lots of lemons,                             |
| Japonya     | Japan                                      |                | lots of lemon                               |
| garaj       | garage                                     | on             | ten   |
| kız         | girl, daughter,                            | on bir         | eleven                                      |
|             | maiden, female                             | on iki         | twelve                                      |
| kim?        | who?                                       | on beş hafta   | fifteen weeks                               |
| küçük       | small, little                              | 0              | he, she, it; that                           |
| küçük kız   | little girl                                |                | (demonstrative),                            |
| el          | hand                                       |                | those                                       |
| elli        | fifty                                      | o ev           | that house                                  |
| lira        | lira (pound: unit                          | o beş ev       | those five houses                           |
|             | of money; the                              | kolay          | easy  |
|             | Turkish Lira                               | dört göz       | four eyes                                   |
|             | contains 100                               | dört büyük göz | four big eyes                               |
|             | kuruş)                                     | pul            | stamp                                       |
| kuruş       | kuruş                                      |                | (postage, etc.)                             |
|             | (unit of money)                            | peynir         | cheese                                      |
| kaç lira?   | how many liras?                            | kaç pul?       | how many                                    |
| kaç kuruş?  | how many kuruş?                            |                | stamps?                                     |
|             | how much                                   | parça          | piece                                       |
|             | (does x cost)?                             | top            | ball, sphere                                |
| 40 lira     | forty Turkish                              | renk           | color                                       |
| 40 kuruş    | Liras and                                  | bardak         | drinking glass                              |
|             | forty kuruş                                | su             | water                                       |
| kol         | arm  | bir bardak su  | a glass of water                            |
| akşam       | evening                                    | beş bardak su  | five glasses of                             |
| minare      | minaret                                    |                | water                                       |

| şey           | thing uh-uh ahem (said when one hesitates in speech) | yüz<br>ve<br>siz ve biz<br>evet | face; hundred<br>and<br>you and we<br>yes |
|---------------|--|---------------------------------|---|
| şimdi         | now  | havuz                           | pool                                      |
| baş           | head   | gâvur                           | heathen                                   |
| at            | horse  | yüksek                          | tall, high                                |
| otuz          | thirty   | yıl                             | year                                      |
| otuz dokuz at | thirty-nine horses                                   | yeni                            | new                                       |
| süt           | milk   | ayak                            | foot                                      |
| sütçü         | milkman  | az                              | few, (a) little,                          |
| Türk          | Turk, Turkish  |                                 | insufficient                              |
| bu            | this, these  | sekiz                           | eight                                     |
| bu ev         | this house   | seksen                          | eighty                                    |
| bu üç ev      | these three houses                                   | kâr                             | profit                                    |
| şu            | that   | kar                             | snow                                      |
|               | (demonstrative),                                     | lâle                            | tulip                                     |
|               | those (far over                                      | Şam                             | Damascus                                  |
|               | yonder)  | Şamî                            | Damascene                                 |
| şu ev         | that house   | Ali                             | man's name                                |
| șu beș ev     | those five houses                                    | âli                             | lofty, sublime                            |

# B. Practice the following words aloud.

#### I. COUNTING

| bir   | one   | yirmi  | twenty        |
|-------|-------|--------|---------------|
| iki   | two   | otuz   | thirty        |
| üç    | three | kırk   | forty         |
| dört  | four  | elli   | fifty         |
| beş   | five  | altmış | sixty         |
| altı  | six   | yetmiş | seventy       |
| yedi  | seven | seksen | eighty        |
| sekiz | eight | doksan | ninety        |
| dokuz | nine  | yüz    | (one) hundred |
| on    | ten   |        |               |

#### 2. PRONOUNS

| ben | I                   | biz   | we               |
|-----|---------------------|-------|------------------|
| sen | you                 | siz   | you (plural,     |
|     | (familiar singular) |       | polite singular) |
| 0   | he, she, it         | onlar | they             |

#### 3. DEMONSTRATIVES

bu this, these şu that, those (at a considerable distance, o that, those see Lesson 7, section 3)

#### 4. Interrogatives

kim? who? ne zaman? when? (what time?)
ne? what? kaç? how much? how many?

#### 5. PROPER NAMES

of men of women

Ahmet Ali Suat Fahrünnisa

Mehmet Erdoğan Süheylâ Selma

Sait Mihri

NOTE I: Mehmet is the Turkish form of the Arabic name Muḥammad. The full form (Muhammed) is used in Turkish only to indicate the prophet of Islam.

Note 2: In modern usage, Bay, placed before a man's full name, represents English 'Mr.'

Bay Mehmet Timuroğlu Mr. Mehmet Timuroğlu

For the names of women, Bayan indicates either 'Mrs.' or 'Miss.'

Bayan Selma Timuroğlu Mrs. Selma Timuroğlu (or) Miss Selma Timuroğlu

In addition to this modern and official usage, there remains in everyday currency an older usage, dating from the time when Turks had not yet adopted last names. In this style of address, the word Bey placed after a man's given name represents English 'Mr.'

Mehmet Bey (Mr.) Mehmet

Ismail Hakkı Bey

(Mr.) İsmail Hakkı (İsmail Hakkı is a double given name, not a first and last name in the Western sense. Today this man might also appear as Bay İ.

H. Ağaoğlu.)

In the older usage the word *Hanım* placed after the given name (or names) represents English 'Mrs.' or 'Miss.'

Mihri Hanım Mrs. Mihri (or) Miss Mihri

Persons who continue to use the older forms regard them as being no less formal than the new forms.

#### 6. Modifiers

| büyük | big, large, great | kolay | easy  |
|-------|-------------------|-------|-------|
| küçük | little, small     | geç   | late  |
| güç   | difficult         | erken | еагіу |

| iyi  | good, well | çok | much, many; very              |
|------|------------|-----|-------------------------------|
| fena | bad, badly | az  | few, (a) little, insufficient |

#### 7. TIME

| yıl   | year    | akşam  | evening      |
|-------|---------|--------|--------------|
| ay    | month   | saat   | hour, time;  |
| hafta | week    |        | watch, clock |
| gün   | day     | dakika | minute       |
| gece  | night   | saniye | second       |
| sabah | morning |        |              |

#### 8. Family

| anne  | mother | oğul | son               |
|-------|--------|------|-------------------|
| baba  | father | kız  | daughter, maiden, |
| çocuk | child  |      | girl, female      |

# 9. THE BODY

| baş   | head  | diş   | tooth |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| yüz   | face  | kol   | arm   |
| göz   | eye   | el    | hand  |
| kulak | ear   | bacak | leg   |
| ağız  | mouth | ayak  | foot  |

#### 10. THE CITY

| şehir  | city           | ev     | house   |
|--------|----------------|--------|---------|
| kasaba | town           | bahçe  | garden  |
| köy    | village        | cami   | mosque  |
| cadde  | avenue, street | minare | minaret |

#### II. EATING

| çay    | tea                 | limon    | lemon           |
|--------|---------------------|----------|-----------------|
| kahve  | coffee, coffeehouse | elma     | apple           |
| su     | water               | portakal | orange          |
| süt    | milk                | ekmek    | bread           |
| bardak | drinking glass      |          | (loaf of) bread |
| fincan | cup                 | peynir   | cheese          |
| yağ    | grease, fat, oil    | şeker    | sugar, candy    |
| meyva  | fruit               | tereyağ  | butter          |

C. Practice saying the names of these Turkish cities and geographical features. Write them, dividing them into syllables.

#### 1. CITIES

| Adana          | Adana        |           |     |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|-----|
| Afyonkar       | ahisar       | Kars      |     |
| afyon          | poppy, opium | Kayseri   |     |
| kara           | black        | Konya     |     |
| hisar          | fortress     | Kütahya   |     |
| Bahkesir       |              | Malatya   |     |
| Bursa          |              | Samsun    |     |
| Diyarbeki      | r            | Trabzon   |     |
| <b>Edirne</b>  |              | Yenişehir |     |
| <b>Erzurum</b> |              | yeni      | new |
| Eskişehir      |              |           |     |
| eski           | old          |           |     |
| şehir          | city         |           |     |

#### 2. GEOGRAPHICAL FEATURES

| Akdeniz       | Mediterranean | Marmara Denizi | Sea of Marmara  |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
|               | Sea           | Van Gölü       | Lake (of) Van   |
| ak            | white         | Ağrı Dağı      | Mt. Ararat      |
| deniz         | sea           |                | (Mountain       |
| Boğaziçi      | Bosporus      |                | of Ağrı)        |
| Çanakkale     |               | Allahüekber    | the Allahüekber |
| Boğazı        | Dardanelles   | Dağları        | Mountains       |
| Ege Denizi    | Aegean Sea    | Allahü ekber   | God is greatest |
| İskenderun    | Gulf of       |                | (Arabic)        |
| Körfezi       | Iskenderun    | Erciyaş Dağı   | Mt. Argaeus     |
| İzmir Körfezi | Gulf of Izmir | Kavaşşahap     | the Kavushshap  |
| Karadeniz     | Black Sea     | Dağları        | Mountains       |
| Tuz Gölü      | Salt Lake     | Toros Dağları  | the Taurus      |
| Kızılırmak    | Red River     |                | Mountains       |
| kızıl         | red, scarlet  |                |                 |
| ırmak         | river, stream |                |                 |

# Lesson 2

Cardinal Numbers. 'One Half.'

Kaç, Çok, and Az. Parça and Tane

#### I. Cardinal numbers

| bir ev   | one house, a house             |
|----------|--------------------------------|
| bir kere | one time, one occurrence, once |
| bir defa | one time, one occurrence, once |
| iki ev   | two houses, the two houses     |

Note: Turkish has no separate word for 'the' (the definite article). Hence every 'absolute' noun (i.e., the simple noun form with no suffix attached) may mean 'X' or 'the X.'

| ev        | house (or) the house | <i>peynir</i> ch | eese (or) the cheese |
|-----------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| üç çocuk  | (the) three children | sekiz hafta      | (the) eight weeks    |
| dört cami | (the) four mosques   | dokuz fincan     | (the) nine cups      |
| beş cadde | (the) five streets   | on kız           | (the) ten girls      |
| altı gece | (the) six nights     | bin bir gece     | (the) thousand and   |
| yedi gün  | (the) seven days     |                  | one nights           |

Cardinal numbers are followed by singular nouns.

#### The cardinal numbers are:

| bir  | I | sekiz   | 8  | on beş    | 15  |
|------|---|---------|----|-----------|-----|
| iki  | 2 | dokuz   | 9  | on altı   | 16  |
| üç   | 3 | on      | 10 | on yedi   | 17  |
| dört | 4 | on bir  | II | on sekiz  | 18  |
| beş  | 5 | on iki  | 12 | on dokuz  | 19  |
| altı | 6 | on üç   | 13 | yirmi     | 20  |
| yedi | 7 | on dört | 14 | yirmi bir | 2 I |
|      |   |         |    |           |     |

| yirmi iki   | 22  | otuz bir | 31       | doksan                | 90  |
|-------------|-----|----------|----------|-----------------------|-----|
| yirmi üç    | 23  | otuz iki | 32       | yüz                   | 100 |
| yirmi dört  | 24  | otuz üç  | 33       | yüz bir               | IOI |
| yirmi beş   | 25  | (etc.)   | (etc.)   | yüz iki               | 102 |
| yirmi altı  | 26  | kırk     | 40       | yüz on                | IIO |
| yirmi yedi  | 27  | elli     | 50       | yüz on bir            | III |
| yirmi sekiz | 28  | altmış   | 60       | iki yüz               | 200 |
| yirmi dokuz | 29  | yetmiş   | 70       | dokuz yüz             |     |
| otuz        | 30  | seksen   | 80       | doksan dokuz          | 999 |
| bin         | I,  | ,000     | yüz bin  | 100,0                 | 00  |
| bin bir     | I,  | 100,     | (bir) mi | i <b>lyon</b> 1,000,0 | 00  |
| on bin      | 10, | ,000     | (bir) mi | lyar 1,000,000,0      | 00  |

#### 2. 'One half'

There are two common words for 'one half.'

yarım, used when no other number is mentioned in the expression

| yarım kilo      | ½ kilogram  |
|-----------------|-------------|
| beş yüz gram    | 500 grams   |
| yarım kilometre | ½ kilometer |
| beş yüz metre   | 500 meters  |
| yarım saat      | ½ hour      |
| otuz dakika     | 30 minutes  |

buçuk, used with numerals

bir buçuk saat 1½ hours
on buçuk kilometre 10½ kilometers
iki buçuk kilo 2½ kilos

# 3. Kaç, çok, and az

Like the cardinal numbers, the 'counting words' kaç 'how much?' 'how many?' çok 'much,' 'many,' and az 'few, 'a little' are followed by singular nouns.

| kaç lira?  | how many liras? | kaç dolar? | how many dollars? |
|------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------|
| kaç kuruş? | how many kurus? | kaç kaşık  | how many spoons   |
| kaç para?  | how much money? | şeker?     | of sugar?         |

| kaç elma? | how many apples? | az ev       | few houses        |
|-----------|------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| çok ev    | many houses,     | az para     | little money,     |
|           | lots of houses   |             | not much money    |
| çok şeker | much sugar,      | çok az para | very little money |
|           | lots of sugar    | biraz şeker | a little sugar    |
| çok limon | many lemons,     | birçok      | a good many       |
|           | lots of lemons,  | gazete      | newspapers        |
|           | lots of lemon    | az çok      | more or less      |

### 4. Parça and tane

These two 'counting words' are to be distinguished from each other:

parça 'piece' (one part, section, segment, etc., of a whole);

tane 'piece' (the meaningless pidgin English counting word 'piece' as in 'one piece man,' 'one piece house,' i.e., 'one man,' 'one house')

Tane may be used or omitted after the cardinal numbers.

| kaç parça ekmek? | how many pieces of bread? (For 'slice' use dilim.) |
|------------------|--|
| kaç tane ekmek?  | how many 'breads?' how many loaves of bread?       |
| kaç ev?          | how many houses?                                   |
| kaç tane ev?     | how many houses?                                   |
| beş ev           | five houses  |
| beş tane ev      | five houses  |
| beş tane         | five (of whatever is being counted)                |
|                  |  |

# Exercises

A. Count aloud to 100, from 100 to 200 by 5's, from 200 to 300 by 10's, from 300 to 500 by 20's.

#### B. Practice aloud. Translate.

| I. Kaç kilo et?             | 9. çok az limon         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2. $\frac{1}{2}$ kilo kahve | 10. 12 tane portakal    |
| 3. az su                    | II. $3\frac{1}{2}$ saat |
| 4. 1½ kilo şeker            | 12. 30 cadde            |
| 5. birkaç kere              | 13. $2\frac{1}{2}$ lira |
| 6. birkaç kilo elma         | 14. Kaç tane elma?      |
| 7. 250 gram tereyağ         | 15. Kaç kuruş?          |
| 8. 5 fincan çay             | 16. 3½ elma             |

|       | 6- |        |
|-------|----|--------|
| 17.   | OU | saniye |
| - / - |    | ~~~~~  |

18. 60 dakika

19. 24 saat

20. I gün

21. **7 gün** 

22. 4 hafta

23. I2 ay

24. 365 gün

25. 100 yıl

26. 2 ağaç

27. 3 oğul

28. Kaç kilo şeker?

29. ½ kilo şeker

30. Ioo defa

31. Kaç para?

32. az para

33. Kaç tane limon?

34. çok elma

35. I baş

36. 2 el

37. 2 ayak

38. **2 göz** 

39. çok az limon

40. 2 bardak su

4I. az su

42. biraz süt

43. çok az süt

44. 10,000 kilometre

45. 8 gazete

46. ½ bardak su

47.  $7\frac{1}{2}$  saat

48. 2 dilim ekmek

49. 3 kaşık şeker

50. 3 tane ekmek

#### C. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud. Spell out all numbers.

- 1. one half kilo of tea
- 2. three kilos of sugar
- 3. two hundred grams of meat
- 4. a slice of bread
- 5. two cups of coffee
- 6. eight apples
- 7. How many houses?
- 8. two minarets
- 9. one mosque
- 10. three years
- 11. four days
- 12. two weeks
- 13. six months
- 14. much milk15. a little water
- 16. two loaves of bread
- 17. two slices of bread
- 18. very little sugar
- 19. many trees

- 20. three rivers
- 21. seventy-seven lakes
- 22. three cities
- 23. sixty-four boys
- 24. one hundred children
- 25. one eye
- 26. two eyes
- 27. two feet
- 28. thirty-two teeth
- 29. one head
- 30. five hundred and fifty-five days
- 31. fifteen years
- 32. twelve girls
- 33. nineteen times
- 34. sixteen gardens
- 35. thirty-five nights36. thirty-six days
- 37. fifty-seven and a half grams

- 38. one hundred liras
- 39. two and a half liras
- 40. two thousand kilowatts
- 41. many mosques
- 42. How many mosques?
- 43. a good many streets
- 44. much water

- 45. little water
- 46. How many glasses of water?
- 47. a little water
- 48. four times
- 49. much fruit
- 50. many apples

# Lesson 3

Position of Adjectives. Indefinite Article with Adjectives. Predicate Modifiers

# 1. Position of adjectives

büvük kız

(the) big girl

küçük kız

(the) little girl

genç adam

(the) young man

yaslı kadın

(the) old woman (yaşlı 'old,' of humans;

otherwise use eski)

When an adjective precedes a noun, it modifies that noun, as in English.

#### 2. Indefinite article with adjectives

bir köpek

a dog; one dog a day; one day

bir gün bir elma

an apple; one apple

bir bardak su

a glass of water; one glass of water

büyük bir kız

a big girl a little girl

küçük bir kız çok küçük bir kız

a very little girl

iki çok küçük kız

two very little girls (the) little, pretty girl

küçük güzel kız küçük güzel bir kız

a little, pretty girl

küçük ve güzel bir kız

a little and pretty girl

The word bir serves as the number 'one' and as the indefinite article 'a,' 'an.' When the indefinite article and one or more other adjectives modify

one noun, Turkish reverses the English order. The adjective or adjectives come first, and the indefinite article immediately precedes the noun. When the word bir means 'one,' however, it precedes the adjective (or adjectives), as in English, e.g., büyük bir kız 'a big girl,' bir büyük kız 'one big girl.'

NOTE 1: Turkish sometimes uses bir with a plural noun. (See Lesson 4, section 5.)

NOTE 2: Bir may be omitted from a Turkish sentence in which the English would require the indefinite article. (See Lesson 14, section 1.)

#### 3. Predicate modifiers

O kız uzun.
Bu kız kısa.
Küçük kız güzel.
Güzel kız küçük.
Bu küçük kız çok güzel.
Bu çok küçük kız güzel.

Bu kız çok küçük ve çok güzel.

Bir kız uzun, bir kız kısa.

Bu çay çok iyi. Güzel kız uzun, diğer kız kısa.

Bu iyi.

That girl is tall.
This girl is short.
The little girl is pretty.
The pretty girl is little.
This little girl is very pretty.

This very small girl is beautiful.

This girl is very tiny and very

pretty.

One girl is tall, (and) one

girl is short.

This tea is very good.

The pretty girl is tall; the other girl is short.

This is good.

In speech (and to a lesser degree in the formal written language), the third person forms, singular and plural, present tense of the Turkish verb 'to be' are not expressed. Hence a Turkish adjective in the predicate position (i.e., following the noun it modifies) expresses a complete sentence, e.g., O kiz uzun 'That girl (is) tall.'

#### Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- güzel bir anne
- O anne güzel.
   Çocuk çok uzun.
- 4. çok uzun bir çocuk
- 5. genç bir kız
- 6. Bir kız genç.
- 7. Genç kız küçük.
- 8. Bu genç kız çok küçük.

- 9. Bu iki kadın iyi.
- 10. on iki iyi kadın
- 11. Bu çok küçük.
- 12. iki yaşlı kadın
- 13. İki kadın yaşlı.
- 14. İki yaşlı kadın kısa.
- 15. Baba iyi.
- 16. bir iyi baba
- 17. iki iyi baba
- 18. İki baba iyi.
- 19. Kaç tane baba?
- 20. Kaç gün?
- 21. Kaç tane elma?
- 22. iyi bir gün
- 23. Bugün iyi.
- 24. Bu, iyi bir gün.
- 25. büyük otomobil
- 26. iki büyük otomobil
- 27. İki otomobil büyük.
- 28. Bu, küçük bir otomobil.
- 29. Bir otomobil yeni, diğer otomobil eski.

- 30. Büyük otomobil yeni.
- 31. Diğer otomobil çok eski.
- 32. Bu, çok eski.
- 33. Bu şeker iyi.
- 34. biraz şeker
- 35. O göl çok büyük.
- 36. iki güzel göl
- 37. İki göl güzel.
- 38. az para
- 39. Bu para çok az.
- 40. biraz para
- 41. üç fincan kahve
- 42. üç kahve
- 43. üç tane kahve
- 44. birçok fincan
- 45. birçok fincan çay
- 46. Kaç para?
- 47. otuz beş lira on beş kuruş
- 48. beş eski ev
- 49. Beş ev eski.
- 50. Bu çok eski.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. a big foot
  - 2. one big foot
  - 3. two big feet
  - 4. This foot is big.
  - 5. One foot is large; the other foot is small.
- 6. How many women?
- 7. two old women
- 8. These two women are old.
- 9. The two old women are short.
- 10. two short old women
- II. a nice street
- 12. two nice streets
- 13. This city is new; the other city is old.

- 14. three tall minarets
- 15. this old house
- 16. This house is high.
- The old house is large;
   the new house is small.
- 18. How many houses?
- 19. How many small houses?
- 20. How many houses are small?
- 21. This house is very small.
- 22. The very small house is lovely.
- 23. four young men
- 24. The four men are young.
- 25. The four young men are tall.

# Lesson 4

# Definite Article. Adjective and Noun. Agglutination. Vowel Harmony. The Plural

küçük çocuk

(the) small child

Cocuk küçük. büyük çocuk

(The) child (is) small. (the) big child

Cocuk büyük.

(The) child (is) big.

#### I. Definite article

Turkish has no separate word equivalent to the English definite article 'the.' Hence any Turkish noun without suffixes (or with the plural suffix: see below, section 5) may be understood with or without 'the' as the sense requires.

bas head (or) the head kahve coffee (or) the coffee

Note: For the devices by which, in certain circumstances, Turkish specifies whether or not a noun is definite see Lesson 6, section 2.

#### 2. Adjective and noun

When an adjective does not modify a noun, the adjective can become a substantive.

Bu genç çocuk güzel. (Genç is used as an attributive adjective.) 'This young child is pretty.' Bu anne genç. (Genç is used as a predicate adjective.) 'This mother is young.'

Bu genç güzel. (Genç is used as a substantive 'youth,' 'youngster.') 'This youngster is pretty.'

Such a word, when it is an adjective, takes no suffixes. Such a word, when it is a substantive, may take suffixes.

# 3. Agglutination

Turkish is said to be an agglutinative language because every element that is affixed to a word or to another element in order to convey meaning is a suffix. Turkish uses no prefixes, except for a few stereotyped borrowings from other languages.

#### 4. Vowel harmony

The eight Turkish vowels are divided into two classes: (1) those formed toward the front of the mouth and (2) those formed toward the back. These classes are called front and back vowels, respectively.

| FRONT VOWELS | BACK VOWELS |
|--------------|-------------|
| е            | a           |
| i            | 1           |
| ö            | o           |
| ü            | u           |

Note: The vowels  $\bar{o}$  and o tend to occur only in the first syllable of an originally Turkish word. With few exceptions  $\bar{o}$  and o do not appear in suffixes.

Each originally Turkish word tends to have all its vowels of the same class, all front or all back. This phenomenon is called vowel harmony. Foreign words borrowed by Turkish, but not entirely assimilated into the language, do not always entirely conform to the principle of vowel harmony. (See Lesson 6, section 2.)

When a suffix is to be added to a word, the final vowel of the word determines the class of vowel (front or back) in that suffix. Therefore, the final vowel is called the dominant vowel. If still another suffix is to be added, the final vowel of the preceding suffix is considered the dominant vowel.

# 5. The plural

| ev     | (the) house     | fil    | (the) elephant  |
|--------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|
| evler  | (the) houses    | filler | (the) elephants |
| dağ    | (the) mountain  | yıl    | (the) year      |
| dağlar | (the) mountains | yıllar | (the) years     |

| göl    | (the) lake  | gün    | (the) day    |
|--------|-------------|--------|--------------|
| göller | (the) lakes | günler | (the) days   |
| top    | (the) ball  | pul    | (the) stamp  |
| toplar | (the) balls | pullar | (the) stamps |

The Turkish plural is formed by the addition to a noun of the plural suffix, which appears as *-ler* after a front dominant vowel  $(e, i, \ddot{o}, \ddot{u})$  and as *-lar* after a back dominant vowel (a, i, o, u). Thus the vowel of the plural suffix always conforms to the principle of vowel harmony.

The symbol  $V^2$  denotes the variable vowel e/a. After a front dominant vowel  $V^2$  is e; after a back dominant vowel, a. The plural suffix may be shown schematically as follows:

#### -1 V2 r

(In this notation, the hyphen indicates that what follows is a suffix, not a word. The hyphen is not written after the suffix, but suffixes may be added to other suffixes.)

|     | DOMINANT | VOWEL F | RONT      |     | DOMINANT | VOWEL B | BACK      |  |
|-----|----------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|---------|-----------|--|
| ev  | house    | evler   | houses    | dağ | mountain | dağlar  | mountains |  |
| fil | elephant | filler  | elephants | yıl | year     | yıllar  | years     |  |
| göl | lake     | göller  | lakes     | top | ball     | toplar  | balls     |  |
| gün | day      | günler  | days      | pul | stamp    | pullar  | stamps    |  |

Note 1: Each noun in the above table, whether in its singular or plural form, is to be understood as being nominative or 'absolute' so long as it bears no other suffix; hence each may be understood with or without the English definite article, as the sense requires.

NOTE 2: A few writers and printers insert an apostrophe between a noun and its (first) suffix. This apostrophe does not alter the pronunciation. It is most frequently used after foreign words and after place-names.

The indefinite article of course has no plural.

bir ev a house evler houses (the houses)

A common word for 'some' is *bazi* (followed by a substantive with a plural suffix).

bir ev a house bazı evler some houses

Bazi may infrequently be used with the singular.

Bazı zaman sometimes

Bir may infrequently be used with the plural.

bir zamanlar once upon a time

#### Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- I. Bugün güzel.
- 2. Bu günler güzel.
- 3. Bu fincanlar çok küçük.
- 4. Kaç tane küçük fincan?
- 5. Kaç tane fincan küçük?
- 6. Bazı fincanlar çok büyük.
- 7. O fincanlar güzel.
- 8. Beş fincan iyi kahve.
- 9. Bu genç çocuk çok büyük.
- 10. Bu genç çok uzun.
- 11. Bu genç çocuklar çok küçük.
- 12. Bu gençler çok kısa.
- 13. Bu fincan büyük.

- 14. Bu büyük fincan güzel.
- 15. Bu fincanlar güzel.
- 16. Bu büyük fincanlar güzel.
- 17. Büyükler güzel.
- 18. Bu büyükler çok iyi.
- 19. Bu ev küçük.
- 20. Bu küçük ev güzel.
- 21. Bu küçük evler güzel.
- 22. Küçükler çok güzel.
- 23. Küçükler eski, büyükler yeni.
- 24. Kaç tane ev küçük?
- 25. Kaç tane küçük ev?

#### B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- I. one horse
- 2. one big horse
- 3. a big horse
- 4. big horses
- 5. the big horses
- 6. two big horses
- 7. some big horses
- 8. Some horses are big.
- 9. This big horse is very good.
- 10. The other big horse is very bad.
- 11. The two big horses are beautiful.
- 12. These horses are small.
- 13. The big ones are very good; the little ones are bad.
- 14. two old women

- 15. the two old women
- 16. some old women
- 17. some old ones
- 18. This woman is old; the other woman is young.
- 19. The old ones are little.
- 20. The young ones are good-looking.
- 21. Fahrünnisa is young; Ahmet is very old.
- 22. This is good.
- 23. This one is good.
- 24. The little houses are old; the large houses are new.
- 25. The little ones are old; the large ones are new.

# Lesson 5

# Common Infinitive. Variable Consonants. Past Definite Verb. Agreement of Subject and Verb

1. Gelmek çok kolay.

2. Bilmek güc.

3. Baktım.

4. Ben baktım.

5. Baktım baktım.

6. Ben baktım baktım.

7. Ahmet geldi.

8. Geldi.

9. Baktık.

10. Fahrünnisa gitti.

II. Ahmet ve Mehmet geldiler.

12. Onlar geldiler.

13. Geldiler.

14. Geldiler!

15. Günler geçti.

Coming (to come) (is) extremely easy.

Comprehension (knowing, to know) (is)

difficult.

I looked (stared).

I looked (stared).

I looked hard (stared and stared).

I stared and stared.

Ahmet came.

He (she, it) came.

We have stared. (We stared.)

Fahrunnisa has gone (went).

Ahmet and Mehmet came (have come).

They have come (came).

They've come (came).

They're here! (They've come!)

(The) days (have) passed.

#### 1. Common infinitive

The common or normal infinitive is formed by adding the suffix

to the simple verb. The simple verb (or 'naked' verb) is the singular imperative. (See Lesson 7, section 4.) The common infinitive is the verb form listed in a Turkish dictionary. Its meaning is rendered equally well in English,

in the case of the common infinitive gelmek, by 'coming' (noun) or by 'to come.'

#### Common infinitives:

| DOMINANT VOWEL FRONT |                    | DO     | DOMINANT VOWEL BACK                       |  |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------|---|--|
| gelmek               | coming, to come    | almak  | taking, to take                           |  |
| bilmek               | knowing, to know   | kırmak | breaking, to break (transitive)           |  |
| görmek               | seeing, to see     | olmak  | becoming, happening, to become, to happen |  |
| gülmek               | laughing, to laugh | bulmak | finding, to find                          |  |

#### 2. Variable consonants

As noted above, Turkish is an agglutinative language. It avoids prefixes. Every Turkish element which is affixed to a word (or to another element) is a suffix. When a suffix is added to a word (or to a preceding suffix), two sorts of consonant change may occur.

- a. The initial consonant of the newly added suffix may be altered.
- b. The final consonant of the preceding word (or suffix) may be altered.

Three variable consonants (or three consonant pairs) are involved in such changes. They are shown by these symbols:

$$t/d$$
  $p/b$   $\varsigma/c$ 

In each case, the first component of the symbol is a voiceless consonant (a consonant which is produced without vibration of the vocal cords). The second component is the corresponding voiced consonant. (A voiced consonant is produced with vibration of the vocal cords.) Turkish voiceless consonants are: c, f, h, k, p, s, s, t. All other Turkish consonants are voiced.

#### CONSONANT CHANGES

Type 1: Initial consonant of newly added suffix changes.

When a suffix begins with the variable consonant t/d or with the variable consonant c/c (no Turkish suffix begins with c/d), that initial variable consonant appears in its voiceless form when it is attached to a voiceless consonant, in its voiced form when it is attached to a directly preceding voiced sound (consonant or vowel).

| süt   | milk   | sütçü   | milkman            |
|-------|--------|---------|--------------------|
| kahve | coffee | kahveci | coffeehouse keeper |
| ev    | house  | evde    | in the house       |
| ateş  | fire   | atește  | in the fire        |

Type 2: Final consonant of preceding word (or suffix) changes.

When a word (or suffix) ends in one of the variable consonants, that final variable consonant appears in its voiceless form unless it is immediately followed by a suffixed vowel.

ağaçı (the) tree
ağaçta in the tree
ağacı the tree (objective definite)

Note I: Many nouns of one syllable, and some nouns of more than one syllable, ending in c, p, or t, do not change the final consonant to c, b, or d before an immediately suffixed vowel. Such instances are often indicated in dictionaries as: top(-pu) 'ball'; et(-ti) 'meat'; sepet(-ti) 'basket';  $\ddot{u}c(-c\ddot{u})$  'three.'

Note 2: The consonant change in verb stems occurs only in a limited number of verbs. *Gitmek* (gid-), and etmek (ed-) are the only prominent examples in which the shift does occur.

#### 3. Past definite verb

The past definite verb forms denote action which really was or really has been completed in the past. The past definite forms are obtained by adding to the verb stem (the 'naked' verb, the common infinitive minus its suffix,  $-m V^2 k$ ) the following endings.

| SINGULAR   |                     | PLURAL         |
|------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1st person | -t/d V4 m           | -t/d V4 k      |
| 2nd person | -t/d V4 n           | -t/d V4 n V4 z |
| 3rd person | -t/d V <sup>4</sup> | -t/d V4 l V2 r |

The symbol V<sup>4</sup> represents the four-variable vowel shown in the following table.

| FRC        | ONT             | BA         | CK            |
|------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|
| When domin | nant vowel is   | When domin | nant vowel is |
| e or i     | $V^4 = i$       | a or i     | $V^4 = i$     |
| ö or ü     | $V^4 = \dot{u}$ | о ог и     | $V^4 = u$     |

The symbol -t/d indicates that these suffixes begin with a variable consonant.

Study the verbs whose past definite forms are given below.

VERBS WHOSE DOMINANT VOWEL IS a

|                   |           | verb stem ends | in             |
|-------------------|-----------|----------------|----------------|
|                   | VOICED    | VOICELESS      | VOWEL          |
|                   | CONSONANT | CONSONANT      | (VOICED)       |
| common infinitive | almak     | bakmak         | anlamak        |
| verb stem         | al        | bak            | anla           |
| meaning           | taking,   | looking,       | understanding, |
|                   | to take   | to look        | to understand  |

| SI | n | g | u | la | lΓ |
|----|---|---|---|----|----|

| B          |         |          |           |
|------------|---------|----------|-----------|
| 1st person | aldım   | baktım   | anladım   |
| 2nd person | aldın   | baktın   | anladın   |
| 3rd person | aldı    | baktı    | anladı    |
| plural     |         |          |           |
| ist person | aldık   | baktık   | anladık   |
| 2nd person | aldınız | baktınız | anladınız |
| 3rd person | aldılar | baktılar | anladılar |

All past definite forms express action that really is finished, really was or has been completed in the past. Hence the first person singular past definite of almak, the form aldum (of the verb which means 'taking,' 'getting possession of,' 'receiving,' 'acquiring') may mean any or all of the following, depending upon the particular context in which aldum is used.

| I took       | I got      | I received      |
|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| I did take   | I did get  | I did receive   |
| I have taken | I have got | I have received |

In the same way, the second singular form, aldın, means that you (one person) really did complete or have completed the action of taking, getting, receiving, acquiring something. Among possible translations for aldın are:

you (singular) took you (singular) did take you (singular) have taken

and so on for the words 'get,' 'acquire,' etc. The verb satın almak means 'to buy.'

NOTE SECOND PERSON SINGULAR AND PLURAL

The second person singular is used:

- a. when speaking to a child or an inferior
- b. as a token of familiarity or affection when speaking to an intimate
- c. rudely as an insult to an individual
- d. solemnly when addressing God or invoking a person who is dead

The second person plural is used:

- a. when speaking to more than one person
- b. as the normal, polite way to address one individual.

In the absence of an expressed subject, the third person singular form, aldi, is assumed to have for its subject the pronoun o 'he,' 'she,' or 'it.'

Aldi. He (she, it) took (did take, has taken something), or He (she, it) got (did get, has gotten something), or the same shades of past definite meaning for the verb 'acquire.'

Aldı may of course have an expressed subject. Ahmet aldı. 'Ahmet got, took, received,' etc.

The first plural past definite form, aldık, not only rings all the changes noted above ('we really did take, have taken,' etc.). In addition, since the first person plural is frequently used to mean 'I' (a sort of polite and modest editorial 'we'), the word aldık may also, if the context requires, express all the meanings given above for the first singular form, aldım.

Aldınız indicates that you (one or more persons [see the note above]) in the past definitely did perform or have performed the action of almak—taking, getting, acquiring, etc.

Aldılar shows that they (two or more persons) really did perform or have performed that action.

The second verb in the table—bakmak—expresses the action of looking, staring, and (with proper suffixes on the substantives concerned) of looking after, caring for, examining, etc. Thus baktım baktım (Turkish repeats words for emphasis) means

I looked and looked.
I did look and look.
I have looked and looked.
etc.

The third verb—anlamak—expresses the idea of comprehending, understanding, catching on, getting the point, etc. Thus its third plural past definite form, anladular, may mean any of the following

They really did understand, realize, comprehend, etc. have understood, etc. understood, etc.

Note: For almak, bakmak, anlamak, and indeed for most Turkish verbs, it is very misleading to try to give one English word which is what the Turkish word 'means.' Instead, the student should attach to the Turkish verb, or noun, or adjective a basic idea which has many possible shades of expression in English.

Each of the three verbs in the above table has the dominant vowel a: almak with a final voiced consonant (al), bakmak with a final voiceless consonant (bak), and anlamak (anla), with a vowel, which is also a voiced sound.

Here follow verbs whose dominant vowels are e, i, u,  $\ddot{u}$ , o, and  $\ddot{o}$ . These tables are not complete: no exotic verbs are introduced simply for the sake of completion.

#### VERBS WHOSE DOMINANT VOWEL IS e

| verb stem end | ds in    |
|---------------|----------|
| VOICELESS     | VOWEL    |
| CONSONANT     | (VOICED) |
| çekmek        | istemek  |

|                   | VOICED    | VOICELESS | VOWEL               |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
|                   | CONSONANT | CONSONANT | (VOICED)            |
| common infinitive | gelmek    | çekmek    | istemek             |
| verb stem         | gel       | çek       | iste                |
| meaning           | coming,   | pulling,  | wishing, wanting,   |
|                   | to come   | to puli   | needing, requiring, |
|                   |           |           | etc.                |
|                   |           |           | to need             |

| singular   |        |        |         |
|------------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1st person | geldim | çektim | istedim |
| 2nd person | geldin | çektin | istedin |
| 3rd person | geldi  | çekti  | istedi  |

| plural     |          |          |           |
|------------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1st person | geldik   | çektik   | istedik   |
| 2nd person | geldiniz | çektiniz | istediniz |
| ard person | geldiler | cektiler | istediler |

# VERBS WHOSE DOMINANT VOWEL IS I

| common infinitive | kırmak    | bıkm <b>a</b> k |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| verb stem         | kır       | bik             |
| meaning           | breaking, | get tired of,   |
|                   | to break  | have enough of, |
|                   | (trans)   | to tire of      |

| singular   |        |        |
|------------|--------|--------|
| ist person | kırdım | bıktım |
| 2nd person | kırdın | bıktın |
| ard person | kurdi  | hikti  |

| plural     |          |          |
|------------|----------|----------|
| 1st person | kırdık   | bıktık   |
| 2nd person | kırdınız | bıktınız |
| ard person | kırdılar | bıktılar |

| VERBS WHOSE DOMIN | NANT VOWEL IS i |          |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------|
| common infinitive | bilmek          | itmek    |
| verb stem         | bil             | it       |
| meaning           | knowing,        | pushing, |
|                   | to know         | to push  |

|      |    | 1   |
|------|----|-----|
| C113 | mi | 101 |
|      |    |     |

| 1st person | bildim | ittim |
|------------|--------|-------|
| 2nd person | bildin | ittin |
| 3rd person | bildi  | itti  |
|            |        |       |

# plural

| bildik   | ittik    |
|----------|----------|
| bildiniz | ittiniz  |
| bildiler | ittiler  |
|          | bildiniz |

#### VERBS WHOSE DOMINANT VOWEL IS O

| common infinitive | olmak      | koşmak   |
|-------------------|------------|----------|
| verb stem         | ol         | koş      |
| meaning           | becoming,  | running. |
|                   | happening, | to run   |
|                   | to become, |          |
|                   | to happen  |          |

# singular

| 1st person | oldum | koştum |
|------------|-------|--------|
| 2nd person | oldun | koştun |
| 3rd person | oldu  | koştu  |

# plural

| 1st person | olduk   | koştuk   |
|------------|---------|----------|
| 2nd person | oldunuz | koştunuz |
| 3rd person | oldular | koştular |

#### VERBS WHOSE DOMINANT VOWEL IS O

|                   | THE TOTTED ID |          |
|-------------------|---------------|----------|
| common infinitive | görmek        | öpmek    |
| verb stem         | gör           | öp       |
| meaning           | seeing,       | kissing, |
|                   | perceiving,   | to kiss  |
|                   | to see,       |          |
|                   | to perceive   |          |

# singular

| J          |        |       |
|------------|--------|-------|
| 1st person | gördüm | öptüm |
| 2nd person | gördün | öptün |
| 3rd person | gördü  | öptü  |
|            |        |       |

#### plural

| 1st person | gördük   | öptük   |
|------------|----------|---------|
| 2nd person | gördünüz | öptünüz |
| 3rd person | gördüler | öptüler |

| VERRS | WHOSE | DOMINANT | VOWEL. | IS 1/ |
|-------|-------|----------|--------|-------|
|       |       |          |        |       |

| ,    | LINDS WHOLE DOMIN | MITT TOTTLE IS A |           |                |
|------|-------------------|------------------|-----------|----------------|
| con  | nmon infinitive   | bulmak           | tutmak    | ok <b>umak</b> |
| ver  | b stem            | bul              | tut       | oku            |
| me   | aning             | finding,         | grasping, | reading,       |
|      |                   | to find          | holding,  | to read        |
|      |                   |                  | to grasp, |                |
|      |                   |                  | to hold   |                |
| sing | gular             |                  |           |                |
|      | 1st person        | buldum           | tuttum    | okudum         |
|      | 2nd person        | buldun           | tuttun    | okudun         |
|      | 3rd person        | buldu            | tuttu     | okudu          |
| plu  | ral               |                  |           |                |
|      | 1st person        | bulduk           | tuttuk    | okuduk         |
|      | 2nd person        | buldunuz         | tuttunuz  | okudunuz       |
|      | 3rd person        | buldular         | tuttular  | okudular       |

| J- 1 F            |                 |           |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| VERBS WHOSE DOMI  | NANT VOWEL IS Ü |           |
| common infinitive | gülmek          | yürümek   |
| verb stem         | gül             | yürü      |
| meaning           | laughing,       | walking,  |
|                   | to laugh        | to walk   |
| singular          |                 |           |
| ist person        | güldüm          | yürüdüm   |
| 2nd person        | güldün          | yürüdün   |
| 3rd person        | güldü           | yürüdü    |
| plural            |                 |           |
| 1st person        | güldük          | yürüdük   |
| 2nd person        | güldünüz        | yürüdünüz |
| 3rd person        | güldüler        | yürüdüler |
|                   |                 |           |

# 4. Agreement of subject and verb

Verb and subject agree in person and number. When the subject is a personal pronoun, the pronoun is not used unless special emphasis is desired.

| normal expression | Geldim.       | I came.  |
|-------------------|---------------|----------|
|                   | Gördünüz.     | You saw. |
| for emphasis      | Ben geldim.   | I came.  |
|                   | Siz gördünüz. | You saw  |

With a third person plural subject which refers to animate beings, especially to humans, the verb is almost always in the third plural form, but may be third singular form.

Ahmet ve Mehmet geldiler. Gençler kostular. Ahmet and Mehmet came. The youths ran.

Rarely

Ahmet ve Mehmet geldi. Gençler koştu. Ahmet and Mehmet came.

The youths ran.

In the case of a third plural subject which does not refer to animate beings, especially to humans, the situation is reversed: the verb usually is in the third singular form, but may be third plural form.

> Günler geçti. Atlar koştu.

(The) days passed. The horses ran.

Sometimes

Atlar koştular.

The horses ran.

Note: Any of the above past definite forms may, of course, express any shade of action which really was, or has been, completed in the past. See Lesson 5, section 3.

### Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- 1. Kim geldi?
- 2. Ne zaman geldiniz?
- 3. Çok okudular.
- 4. Az okudun.
- 5. Çok az anladım.
- 6. Az anladık.
- 7. Çocuklar çok koştular.
- 8. İki çocuk bu sabah geldiler.
- 9. Bu kahve çok iyi.
- Bir buçuk kilo kahve satın aldım.
- 11. Kim güldü?
- 12. Erdoğan çok güldü.
- 13. Kaç defa geldiniz?
- İstanbul büyük ve güzel bir sehir.

- 15. Akdeniz büyük, Marmara Denizi küçük.
- 16. Ev güzel bahçe büyük.
- 17. Gençler bugün geldiler.
- 18. Beş genç güldüler.
- 19. Bu çocuk çok genç.
- 20. Genç kız koştu.
- 21. iki büyük göz
- 22. İki göz büyük.
- 23. Bu göz büyük; o göz küçük.
- 24. Bu ne?
- 25. Bu bir elma.
- 26. Kaç litre süt?
- 27. iki buçuk fincan süt
- 28. Onlar kim?
- 29. Onlar Sait ve Ali.

- 30. Kim anladı?
- 31. Onlar anladılar.
- 32. Bu evler büyük.
- 33. Bunlar büyük.
- 34. Büyükler bu sabah geldiler.
- 35. Gençler bu akşam geldiler.
- 36. Meyvalar oldu.
- 37. Ahmet gelmek istedi.
- 38. Ahmet, ne zaman geldin?
- 39. Bu sabah geldim.
- 40. Çocuklar biraz okudular.

- 41. Ne istediler?
- 42. Kaç otomobil gördünüz?
- 43. Beş otomobil gördüm.
- 44. Ne oldu?
- 45. iyi çocuklar
- 46. Ne zaman geldin?
- 47. Gençler koştular.
- 48. Ne buldunuz?
- 49. iki iyi çocuk
- 50. Ne okudular?

#### B. Write in Turkish, Practice aloud.

- I. a big boy
- 2. The boy is big.
- 3. four little girls
- 4. The four girls are little.
- 5. five pretty little girls
- 6. These five little girls are pretty.
- 7. three big bad boys
- 8. A bad boy came this morning.
- The bad boy came this morning.
- 10. Who came?
- 11. When did Ahmet come?
- 12. two kilos of oranges
- 13. two kilos of good oranges

- 14. These two kilos of oranges are very good.
- 15. The apples are very good; the oranges are bad.
- 16. Süheyla has read much.
- 17. We took very little.
- 18. This city is very large.
- 19. The sea and mountains are lovely.
- 20. The street is big; the mosque is small.
- 21. When did they come?
- 22. How many apples did Ahmet want?
- 23. He wanted seven apples.
- 24. How many spoons of sugar?
- 25. How many slices of bread?

# Lesson 6

Verbs of the Type Gitmek (Gider).

Objective Definite

- 1. Geldi gitti.
- 2. İstanbulu gördük.
- 3. Kahveyi bu sabah satın aldım.
- 4. Ahmedi dün gördüm.
- 5. Köpek güzel.
- 6. Köpeği kim gördü?
- 7. Ben dün bir köpek gördüm.
- 8. Yalnız o adamı gördünüz.
- 9. Sizi gördüler.
- 10. Kaç kilo şeker aldı?

He's come (and) gone. (He came [and] went.)

We've seen (been to) Istanbul.

I bought the coffee this morning.

I saw Ahmet yesterday.

The dog's a fine one.

Who's seen the dog?

I saw a dog yesterday.

You saw only that man.

They saw you.

How many kilos of sugar did he (or she) buy?

## I. Verbs of the type gitmek (gider)

A few verbs—of which gitmek (gider), 'to go,' and etmek (eder), the auxiliary verb meaning 'to do,' are the most important—have stems which end in the variable consonant t/d (for gitmek, the stem is git or gid; for etmek, et or ed).

When a suffix whose own initial sound is also a variable consonant is added to a verb stem of this limited type, both the final variable consonant of the verb stem and also the initial variable consonant of the suffix appear in their voiceless forms.

A case in point is the past definite. The forms for gitmek and etmek are singular

| 2nd person<br>3rd person | ettim<br>ettin<br>etti | gittim<br>gittin<br>gitti | I went, did go, have gone, etc. |
|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ist person<br>2nd person | ettik<br>ettiniz       | gittik<br>gittiniz        |                                 |
| 3rd person               | ettiler                | gittiler                  |                                 |

When, however, to a verb stem of this type there is added a suffix whose initial sound is a vowel, the final variable consonant of the verb stem appears in its voiced form. The third singular form of the general verb (see Lesson 11, section 2) illustrates this variation, e.g., for *gitmek*, the third singular general is *gider*; for *etmek*, it is *eder*.

Verbs of the type *gitmek* (*gider*) are sometimes shown in dictionaries by indicating the third singular general form in parentheses, after the common infinitive.

## 2. The objective definite

The objective definite suffix has a double function. It simultaneously indicates (a) that the substantive to which it is attached is the direct object of a verb, and (b) that the same substantive is definite. (A substantive is definite when it is the proper name of a person, place, or thing, or when, in English, the corresponding word is preceded by 'the,' a word indicating possession, or by a demonstrative adjective.) Unless the substantive in question meets the second of these conditions (i.e., is definite), it does not take this suffix, even though it is the direct object of a verb.

Hence, the objective suffix can be called a definite article that is used only with the objective. When attached to a word that ends in a consonant, this suffix is simply the variable vowel  $V^4$ ,  $(i, i, \ddot{u}, u)$ . When this suffix is attached to a word that ends in a vowel, however, a consonant buffer is needed between the word's terminal vowel and the  $V^4$  of the suffix because Turkish abhors the sequence vowel-vowel (see Lesson I, section 5). With the objective definite suffix, the buffer consonant employed is y. Hence the full notation for the objective definite suffix is

-(y) V<sup>4</sup>

(In this notation, the hyphen shows that what follows is a suffix; the parentheses show that the y is a buffer consonant, employed only when it is needed; and the symbol  $V^4$  indicates the four-variable vowel i-i-i-u.)

#### ABSOLUTE FORM

(The substantive may be (a) subject, definite or indefinite; or (b) object, indefinite.)

#### **OBJECTIVE DEFINITE FORM**

(The substantive is both (a) object and also (b) definite.)

| gece      | night          | geceyi     |
|-----------|----------------|------------|
| geceler   |                | geceleri   |
| ev        | house          | evi        |
| evler     |                | evleri     |
| efendi    | gentleman, sir | efendiyi   |
| efendiler |                | efendileri |
| fil       | elephant       | fili       |
| filler    |                | filleri    |
| Mösyö     | Monsieur       | Mösyöyü    |
| Mösyöler  |                | Mösyöleri  |
| göl       | lake           | gölü       |
| göller    |                | gölleri    |
| sözcü     | spokesman      | sözcüyü    |
| sözcüler  |                | sözcüleri  |
| gün       | day            | günü       |
| günler    |                | günleri    |
| baba      | father         | babayı     |
| babalar   |                | babaları   |
| dağ       | mountain       | dağı       |
| dağlar    |                | dağları    |
| halı      | rug            | halıyı     |
| halılar   |                | halıları   |
| yıl       | уеаг           | yılı       |
| yıllar    |                | yılları    |
| bando     | band (musical) | bandoyu    |
| bandolar  |                | bandoları  |
| top       | ball           | topu       |
| toplar    |                | topları    |
| kutu      | box            | kutuyu     |
| kutular   |                | kutuları   |
| pul       | stamp          | pulu       |
| pullar    |                | pulları    |

The sequence in which suffixes are added must always be learned by observation. In this case, for example, the plural suffix precedes the objective definite suffix. The objective definite is frequently used where English does not

use a definite article (although English does, in these instances, convey the idea of definiteness).

*İzmiri gördük*. We have seen Izmir. Bizi gördüler. They saw us.

Many words in common use (but not of Turkish origin) do not conform to vowel harmony, but are followed by front-voweled suffixes despite the presence of the back dominant vowel. This is sometimes shown in dictionaries in the following manner:

> saat (saati) hour, time; watch, clock hal (hali) circumstance, situation, condition

The form in parentheses is the objective definite.

## 3. Variable consonants followed by objective definite

In the case of words which end in a c, p, or t, the terminal consonant of some nouns of one syllable and most nouns of more than one syllable assumes its voiced form before any immediately following vowel (see Lesson 5, section 2). This holds true with the objective definite suffix.

| ABSOLU    | TE FORM       | OBJECTIVE DEFINITE FORM |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------------|
| Ahmet     | man's name    | Ahmedi                  |
| Ahmetler  |               | Ahmetleri               |
| Mehmet    | man's name    | Mehmedi                 |
| Mehmetler |               | Mehmetleri              |
| sahip     | owner, master | sahibi                  |
| sahipler  |               | sahipleri               |
| ağaç      | tree          | ağacı                   |
| ağaçlar   |               | ağaçları                |
| dört      | four          | dördü                   |
| dörtler   |               | dörtleri                |

Such words are shown in dictionaries with the objective definite form in parentheses, following the absolute form.

dört (dördü) four sahip (sahibi) owner, master

## 4. Doubled consonants followed by objective definite

Some originally non-Turkish words that in the original language end in a doubled consonant—for example, the Arabic word 'haqq'—in their Turkish

guise tend to drop the second consonant except when a vowel is directly suffixed. In that event, the doubled consonant reappears.

hak (hakkı)

right, truth: God

## 5. 'Ayn followed by objective definite

Many words which Turkish has borrowed from Arabic contained—in the original Arabic form—the characteristic Semitic consonant 'ayn (¿). If any trace of the sound of this consonant remains in modern Turkish pronunciation, it is simply a full stop in the breath.

Turkish spelling does not indicate an original initial 'ayn.

Ali, man's name (Arabic 'Alî)

Turkish spelling may or may not indicate an original medial 'ayn.

sanat or san'at 'art,' 'craft' (Arabic 'san'ah')

Of these two possibilities, the first (sanat) may be pronounced with no stop in the breath; the second (san'at), with a full stop, indicated by the apostrophe.

Turkish spelling (and pronunciation) may or may not indicate an original final 'ayn. This is especially true when a vowel is directly suffixed to the word in question. *Cami* 'mosque' with the objective definite may appear as *camii* or as *camiyi*.

## 6. Final k followed by objective definite

Polysyllables in final k 'soften' that k to a g before an immediately suffixed vowel.

dog

köpek (köpeği)

elektrik (elektriği) electricity avak (avağı) foot

bardak (bardağı) drinking glass

Most monosyllables in final k do not soften the k to a g before an immediately following vowel.

ok (oku) arrow

The word çok is an exception.

çok (çoğu) much, many; lots (of)

## 7. Nouns of the type oğul (oğlu) followed by objective definite

Although Turkish admits a syllable of the pattern VCC (see Lesson 1, section 6), it frequently prefers to avoid the sequence consonant-consonant

at the end of the final syllable of a substantive. Hence several nouns—some of them originally Turkish (oğul 'son') and some of them borrowed (sehir 'city' from Persian 'shahr')—whose absolute pattern would end with VCC, insert an 'unstable' vowel between the two final consonants. When an immediately following vowel is suffixed, however, the 'unstable' vowel drops out.

| ABSOLUTE FORM | OBJECTIVE DEFINITE FORM |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| oğul son      | oğlu                    |
| oğullar       | oğulları                |
| şehir city    | şehri                   |
| şehirler      | şehirleri               |

Nouns of the type oğul (oğlu) are so indicated in dictionaries.

## Exercises

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
- Parayı kim aldı?
   Parayı Ahmet aldı.
   Onu Ahmet aldı.
- 2. Parayi kim aldı?
  Ahmet aldı.
  Onu ne zaman aldı?
  Parayi bu sabah aldı.
  Onu bu sabah aldı.
  Bu sabah aldı.
- Mehmet, Ahmedi ne zaman gördünüz? Ahmedi bugün gördüm. Bugün gördüm.
- Çocuklar! Bugün kimi gördünüz?
   Bugün bir kaç adam gördük.
- Bu iki adamı kim gördü?
   Onları biz gördük.
- 6. Bu küçük kız ne kırdı? Bir fincan kırdı.
- Fincanları kim kırdı?
   Fincanları küçük kız kırdı.
   Onları küçük kız kırdı.

- 8. Kız fincanları ne zaman kırdı? Onları bu sabah kırdı.
- Küçük kız kaç tane fincan kırdı? İki tane fincan kırdı. İki tane kırdı.
- 10. Köpek neyi gördü? Köpek kediyi gördü. Kedi koştu.
- II. Kedi ne istedi? Kedi süt istedi. Kedi neyi buldu? Kedi sütü buldu.
- 12. Bu beş bardağı kim aldı? Onları ben aldım. Bardakları ne zaman aldınız? Bardakları bu akşam aldım.
- 13. Bu dağlar çok güzel.Güzel dağları gördüler.Bazı güzel dağlar gördüler.
- 14. Ahmet, ne zaman geldin? Bu sabah geldim. Ahmet ne zaman geldi? Bu sabah geldi.

- 15. Mehmet ve Sait dün geldiler.Dün kim geldi?Dün onlar geldiler.
- 16. Onu kim anladı?
  Onu ben anladım.
- 17. Geç geldiniz, Ahmet! Evet, çok geç geldim.
- 18. İstanbul büyük bir şehir. İstanbulu kim gördü? Onu biz gördük.
- 19. O çocuklar çok küçük. Ne zaman gittiler? Küçükler bu sabah gittiler.
- 20. Hoş geldiniz, Ahmet! Hoş bulduk, Mehmet!
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. I read the book yesterday.
  - 2. I read two books yesterday.
  - 3. Who has read this book?
  - 4. You went yesterday.
  - 5. Welcome, Fahrünnisa!
  - 6. Thank you, I'm glad to be here, Selma!
- 7. Mehmet wanted some money.
- 8. How much money did Mehmet want?
- 9. Who wanted the money?
- 10. I found the two liras.

# Lesson 7

Personal Pronouns. Interrogative Pronouns.

Demonstratives. The Imperative. Word Order

I. Gel! Bunu al!

2. Gelin! Bunu alın!

3. Geliniz! Bunu alınız!

4. Gelsin! Bunu alsın!

5. Gelsinler! Bunu alsınlar!

 Ben sizi gördüm, siz onları gördünüz.

7. Sizi ben gördüm, onları siz gördünüz.

Come here! Take this! (to one person, speaking most familiarly)

Come here! Take this! (to one person, speaking less familiarly than above)

Come here! Take this! (to one person, speaking formally, or to more than one person)

Let him (her, it) come here! Let him (her, it) take this! (If only he would . . . I wish that he would . . . It would be a good thing if he would . . ., etc.)

If only they would come (and) take this!

Let them come! Let them take this!

I saw you and you saw them.

I saw you and you saw them.

1. Personal pronouns

ABSOLUTE (NOMINATIVE)
FORM

singular

1st person

ben

OBJECTIVE DEFINITE FORM

beni

| 2nd person | sen   | seni   |
|------------|-------|--------|
| 3rd person | 0     | onu    |
| plural     |       |        |
| 1st person | biz   | bizi   |
| 2nd person | siz   | sizi   |
| 3rd person | onlar | onları |

Note that the buffer consonant with the third singular is n rather than the usual y, and that n precedes the plural suffix in the third plural forms.

Sometimes a plural suffix is used with the first and second plural forms.

bizler we sizler you

## 2. Interrogative pronouns

|        |         | OBJECTIV | E DEFINITE |
|--------|---------|----------|------------|
| ABSOLU | TE FORM | F        | ORM        |
| kim?   | who?    | kimi?    | whom?      |
| ne?    | what?   | neyi?    | what?      |

These words sometimes take plural suffixes.

kimler neler

NOTE 1: Ne is sometimes an adjective.

ne zaman? when? (what time?)

Note 2: Ne is sometimes exclamatory.

ne güzel! how lovely!

## 3. Demonstratives

| ABSOLU     | TE FORM |       | OBJECTIVE DEFINITE FORM |
|------------|---------|-------|-------------------------|
| singular   |         |       |                         |
| ist person | bu      | this  | bunu                    |
| 2nd person | şu      | that  | şunu                    |
| 3rd person | 0       | that  | onu                     |
| plural     |         |       |                         |
| ist person | bunlar  | these | bunları                 |
| 2nd person | şunlar  | those | şunları                 |
| 3rd person | onlar   | those | onları                  |

Note that o 'that' is the same as o 'he,' 'she,' 'it.'

The basic distinction between su 'that' and o 'that' is: su refers to some thing, person, etc., that, although at some distance from the speaker, is still within sight and can be indicated by a gesture; o refers to some thing, person, etc., that is usually not in sight; su frequently means 'the following,' 'as follows.'

The demonstratives are adjectives when they modify a following noun, pronouns when used alone. As adjectives they take no suffixes. As pronouns they take suffixes. (Note the buffer n.)

From the demonstratives are formed the words

böyle in this fashion, thus söyle in that fashion, as follows ovle in that fashion

These words may be used adverbially or adjectivally.

Böyle oldu. It happened in this fashion. böyle bir gün a day like this

## 4. The imperative

The Turkish imperative includes two persons.

- a. the second person, singular and plural, the individual (or individuals) to whom one gives a command. '(you) come here!'
- b. the third person, singular and plural, the individual or individuals about whom a sort of command is given. 'Let him come!' 'Let them take!'

'Please' is lutfen.

The imperative suffixes are

singular

2nd person, Form I verb stem without suffix 2nd person, Form II verb stem plus (y) V<sup>4</sup> n yerb stem plus s V<sup>4</sup> n

plural

2nd person verb stem plus (y) V<sup>4</sup> n V<sup>4</sup> z 3rd person verb stem plus s V<sup>4</sup> n l V<sup>2</sup> r

| singular   | gelmek<br>to come | almak<br>to take | gitmek<br>to go | istemek<br>to want,<br>wish |
|--|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| singular 2nd person, Form I 2nd person, Form II 3rd person | gel               | al               | git             | iste                        |
|  | gelin             | alın             | gidin           | isteyin                     |
|  | gelsin            | alsın            | gitsin          | istesin                     |

plural

2nd person geliniz alınız gidiniz isteyiniz 3rd person gelsinler alsınlar gitsinler istesinler

The use of the second person singular and of the second plural has been presented (see Lesson 5, section 3).

In the second singular imperative, Form I (the simple verb stem) is ordinarily used. Form II (with the suffix -(y) V<sup>4</sup> n) expresses a degree of politeness between the familar Form I and the formal second plural. It is not frequently used, the second plural imperative or the second plural general (aorist) are preferred instead (see Lesson II, section 2).

## 5. Word order

Word order in a formal Turkish sentence usually is

- a. subject (unless the subject is an unexpressed personal pronoun)
- b. object or complement (a pronoun object whose sense is clear is often left out where English would always express the object)
- c. verb.

When the sentence includes an indirect object (shown by the dative suffix: see Lesson 8, section 2), the indirect object may precede or follow the direct object.

Generally speaking, the word immediately before the verb is the word whose position in the sentence gives it the greatest importance.

A comma frequently follows the subject.

## Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- I. Ahmet otomobili aldı.
- 2. Otomobili Ahmet aldı.
- 3. Beni kim gördü?
- 4. Seni istediler.
- Şu kitabı okudum fakat siz bunu okudunuz.
- Büyük camii gördük.
   (Büyük camiyi gördük.)
- 7. Kimi istediler?
- 8. Mehmet, bak bak! Ahmet geldi.

- 9. Lûtfen, bu meyvayı alınız.
- 10. Kahveyi iç!
- II. Gel, Mehmet!
  Ahmet bir şey kırdı.
- 12. Bunu anlamak çok güç.
- 13. Bizi kaç defa gördünüz?
- 14. Onlar ne zaman geldiler?
- 15. Onları bulunuz.
- 16. Dün bildin.
- 17. Böyle bir şeyi kim istedi?
- 18. Gittim, gördüm, geldim.

- Bu kitabı bugün okuyunuz, lûtfen.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. Find it!
  - 2. Laugh!
  - 3. He saw me and I saw him.
  - 4. Let them come!
  - 5. These are big.
  - 6. I have seen Izmir and Eskişehir.
  - 7. The big ones are these.
  - 8. The boy came yesterday.

- 20. Çabuk gelsinler!
- 9. They went this week.
- 10. This month is very lovely.
- He wanted 15 liras and 35 kuruş.
- 12. I received the 15 liras yesterday.
- 13. They bought two big rugs.
- 14. This is very difficult.
- 15. These things are very easy.

# Lesson 8

Nere\*, Bura\*, Ora\*. Dative, Locative, and Ablative. Fractions. Calendar. The Word -d V<sup>2</sup>

I. Parayı nerede buldunuz?

2. Kutuda buldum.

3. Parayı kime verdiniz?

4. Onu Ahmede verdim.

5. Parayı kimden aldınız?

6. Mehmetten aldık.

Where did you find the money?

I found (it) in the box.

To whom did you give the money?

I gave it to Ahmet.

From whom did you get the money?

We got it from Mehmet.

## I. Nere\*, Bura\*, Ora\*

In the English sentences

a.

Where are you going?

I went there.

They came here.

b.

Where is she?
We were there.

He is here.

.

Where did he come from?

He came from there.

They left here.

each of the words 'where,' 'there,' and 'here' expresses three distinct ideas.

a. place towards which b. place in which c. place from which

In Turkish, these three distinct ideas are indicated by distinct suffixes (the dative, locative, and ablative suffixes), and the three Turkish words nere\* 'where?' (interrogative), bura\* 'here,' 'this place,' and ora\* 'there,' 'that place' themselves take those suffixes.

The asterisks with nere\*, bura\*, and ora\* indicate that the absolute forms (the forms with no suffix) of these words do not occur in modern literary Turkish.

## 2. Dative suffix -(y) V<sup>2</sup>

The suffix -(y) V<sup>2</sup> denotes motion toward a point, motion through space or motion through time.

When it is attached to a word which ends in a variable consonant, that consonant assumes its voiced form.

| ağaç    | (the) tree  | ağaca    | to (the) tree  |
|---------|-------------|----------|----------------|
| ağaçlar | (the) trees | ağaçlara | to (the) trees |

In polysyllables, the dative suffix 'softens' a final k to  $\check{g}$ .

| çocuk    | (the) child    | çocuğa    | to (the) child    |
|----------|----------------|-----------|-------------------|
| çocuklar | (the) children | çocuklara | to (the) children |

With such verbs as *vermek* 'to give,' the dative suffix expresses the indirect object.

The dative suffix also denotes the recipient of the action of many verbs.

| Ona güldü.     | He laughed at it.                                     |
|----------------|---|
| gülmek         | to laugh, laugh at (with dative)                      |
| Bize baktılar. | They looked at us. They looked after us.              |
| bakmak         | to look at (with dative), to look after (with dative) |

Verbs which govern a dative suffix on a preceding substantive are so noted in some dictionaries.

Another common function of the dative suffix is to express cause.

neve, alternative and more common form: nive for what? why?

## 3. Locative suffix -t/d V<sup>2</sup>

This suffix -t/d V<sup>2</sup> denotes location at a point, a point in space or in time. When it is attached to a word ending in a variable consonant, that final variable consonant assumes its voiceless form as does the initial variable consonant of the suffix.

| ağaç      | (the) tree     |  |
|-----------|----------------|--|
| ağaçta    | at (the) tree  |  |
|           | in (the) tree  |  |
| ağaçlar   | (the) trees    |  |
| ağaçlarda | in (the) trees |  |
|           | at (the) trees |  |

## 4. Ablative suffix -t/d V2 n

This suffix -t/d V<sup>2</sup> n denotes motion away from a point, a point in space or in time. It affects a preceding variable consonant as does the locative suffix.

ağaç (the) tree
ağaçtan from (the) tree
ağaçlar (the) trees
ağaçlardan from (the) trees

Principal meanings of the ablative suffix include

a. cause

ondan from that, because of that, therefore

neden from what? why?

b. composition

taştan from stone (taş), made out of stone

taştan bir ev a stone house

c. the agent of the passive (see Lesson 21, section 2)

d. comparison (see Lesson 12, section 4)

e. the recipient of the action of such verbs as bahsetmek (the auxiliary verb etmek 'to do,' may be written as an enclitic, especially after a monosyllable), 'to speak of, about' (with ablative), 'to discuss' with ablative). Verbs which govern an ablative suffix on a preceding substantive are so noted in some dictionaries.

Onlardan çok bahsettik. We talked a lot about them.

We discussed them at length.

f. an adverbial sense

eskiden of old, in olden times,

formerly

Note such expressions as

birdenbire suddenly (lit. 'from one to one')

doğrudan doğruya directly, straightaway

(lit. 'from straight to straight')

5. Dative, locative, and ablative forms of *nere\**, *bura\**, *ora\**, the personal pronouns, the interrogatives, and the demonstratives *nere\**, *bura\**, *ora\**, *şura\** 

nere\* what place? nerede at what place nereye to where? nereden from where?

| bura*   | this place    | orada   | at that place |
|---------|---------------|---------|---------------|
| buraya  | to here       | oradan  | from there    |
| burada  | at this place | şura*   | that place    |
| buradan | from here     | şuraya  | to there      |
| ora*    | that place    | şurada  | at that place |
| orava   | to there      | şuradan | from there    |

The above words sometimes take the plural suffix, e.g., buralarda 'in these parts.'

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

| ben          | I               | Siz      | you (plural)      |
|--------------|-----------------|----------|-------------------|
| bana         | to me           | size     |                   |
| bende        | at (or) with me | sizde    |                   |
| benden       | from me         | sizden   |                   |
| biz          | we              | 0        | he, she, it; that |
| bize         | to us           | ona      |                   |
| bizde        | at (or) with us | onda     |                   |
| bizden       | from us         | ondan    |                   |
| sen          | you (singular)  | onlar    | they              |
| sana         |                 | onlara   |                   |
| sende        |                 | onlarda  |                   |
| senden       |                 | onlardan |                   |
| DEMONSTRATIV | VES             |          |                   |
| b            | u this          | şu       | that              |
| h            | una             | suna     |                   |

| bu        | this  | şu        | that  |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| buna      |       | şuna      |       |
| bunda     |       | şunda     |       |
| bundan    |       | şundan    |       |
| bunlar    | these | şunlar    | those |
| bunlara   |       | şunlara   |       |
| bunlarda  |       | şunlarda  |       |
| bunlardan |       | şunlardan |       |

#### INTERROGATIVES

| kim       | who?  | ne         | what? |
|-----------|-------|------------|-------|
| kime      |       | neye, niye |       |
| kimde     |       | nede       |       |
| kimden    |       | neden      |       |
| kimler    | neler |            |       |
| kimlere   |       | nelere     |       |
| kimlerde  |       | nelerde    |       |
| kimlerden |       | nelerden   |       |

#### 6. Fractions

The locative is used in expressing fractions.

3te 2 (üçte iki)2/3, in three, two100de 15 (yüzde on beş)15/100, 15 percentyüzde yüz100 percent

In addition to dörtte bir 'one fourth,' one may in certain situations use the word ceyrek, 'quarter.'

bir çeyrek saat a quarter of an hour

## 7. Calendar

The days of the week are

PazarSundayPerşembeThursdayPazartesiMondayCumaFridaySalıTuesdayCumartesiSaturdayÇarşambaWednesday

The names of the days are usually used in the possessive construction with the noun gün 'day' (see Lesson 10).

Pazar günüMondaySalı günüWednesdayPazartesi günüTuesdayetc.

The months of the year are

Ocak January (older terms Ekim October (older terms are İkinci Kânun are Birinci Tesrin and Son Kânun) and Ilk Tesrin) November (older Subat February Kasım Mart March terms are Ikinci Nisan April Tesrin and Mavis May Son Tesrin) Haziran Aralık December (older June Temmuz terms are Birinci July Kânun and Ağustos August Evlûl September İlk Kânun)

Nouns of time such as those above are often used absolutely (i.e., with no suffixes).

Salı günü on Tuesday bu ay this month

#### 8. The word d V<sup>2</sup>

This word must be distinguished from the locative suffix  $(-t/d V^2)$ ; see Lesson 8, section 3).

The word d V<sup>2</sup> ('also,' 'too,' 'for X's part,' 'in X's turn'), although it is an independent word, conforms in vowel harmony to the preceding word.

Erdoğan da geldi. Erdoğan came, too. evde de also in the house garajlarda da in (the) garages, too.

Repeated, d V2 means 'both . . . and'

sana da bana da to both you and me senden de benden de from both you and me

## **Exercises**

A. Practice aloud. Translate.

I. Dün sabah Ankaradan kaç kişi geldi?

Beş kişi geldi.

Nereden geldiler?

Ankaradan.

Ahmet ve Mehmet de geldiler.

Evet, onlar da geldiler.

2. Bu halılar çok güzel, Ali.

Evet, çok güzel.

Onları nerede buldunuz?

Onları İstanbulda buldum.

Nerede?

Kapalıçarşıda.

Onları kaça aldınız?

Büyük halıya 500 lira verdim.

- Sah günü Ahmet Bey İstanbula geldi. Kapalıçarşıya gitti. Orada çok şey gördü. İki güzel halı satın aldı. Sonra Taksime gitti. O akşam Taksimde bir otelde kaldı. Çarşamba sabah saat sekizde İstanbuldan Ankaraya döndü.
- 4. Kız dün İzmire gitti.
- 5. Nereden geldi?
- 6. Ankaradan geldi.
- 7. Ahmedi nerede gördünüz?
- 8. Köpek nerede?
- 9. Köpeği bahçede gördüm.

- 10. Bir gün bir kedi bir köpek gördü. Köpek kediyi gördü. Kedi köpeğe baktı, baktı. Birdenbire kedi bahçeden kaçtı. Çabuk kaçtı. Köpek bahçeden eve döndü.
- 11. Parayı kimden aldılar?
- 12. Parayı Mehmetten aldılar.
- 13. Kaç para aldılar?
- 14. Ahmet on beş lirayı kime verdi?
- 15. Parayı onlara verdi.
- 16. Sütü kim içti?
- 17. Neyi içtiniz?
- 18. Anne ve baba Ahmetten bahsettiler.
- 19. Çok geç geldiniz.
- 20. Evet, geç geldik.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - I. I also wanted that book.
  - 2. Ahmet returned on Sunday.
  - 3. Whom did they see in Izmir?
  - 4. How many kilos of cheese did she want?
  - 5. She wanted 250 grams of cheese.
  - 6. This cheese is very good.
- 7. Where did they go yesterday?
- 8. Where did you come from this morning?
- 9. Who looked after the children?
- 10. Selma took care of them yesterday.
- 11. What did you see in the tree, Erdoğan?
- 12. I saw the cat in the tree, Father.
- 13. What did you find in the box, Ahmet?
- 14. I found ten liras in the box.
- 15. Who took the sugar out of the cup?

# Lesson 9

Negative Verb. Interrogative Particle (m V<sup>4</sup>). Negative Interrogative. Negative Expressions

Ahmet Dün İstanbula gittiniz mi?
 Did you go to Istanbul yesterday?

 Mehmet Hayır, gitmedim. Fakat Erdoğan gitti.
 No, I didn't. But Erdoğan did.

 A. Niçin gitmediniz?
 Why didn't you go?

 M. İstemedim.

M. **İstemedim.**I didn't want to.

2. Selma Peynir satın almadınız mı? Didn't you buy (any) cheese?

Mihri Almadım. No, I didn't.

S. Hiç bir şey satın almadınız mı?
Didn't you buy anything?

M. Süt, kahve ve şeker satın aldım.I bought milk and coffee and sugar.

3. Ali Ahmet parayı bulmadı mı?
Didn't Ahmet find the money?

Sait Bulmadı.
No, he didn't.

A. Onu siz buldunuz mu? Did you find it?

S. Hayır, ben de bulmadım.
No, I didn't find it either.

4. Anne Köpeği gördün mü?

Have you seen the dog?

Kız Hayır, köpeği görmedim. Sen de onu görmedin mi?

No, I haven't seen the dog. Haven't you seen him either?

A. Ben de görmedim. Kediyi nerede gördün?

I haven't either. Where did you see the cat?

K. Kediyi de görmedim. Onu sen de görmedin mi?

I haven't seen the cat either. Haven't you seen her either?

## 1. Negative verb (-m V2)

The negative sign (or particle or syllable) is -m V<sup>2</sup>. It is attached directly to the verb stem, and other suffixes are added to it.

#### COMMON INFINITIVE

POSITIVE NEGATIVE

gitmek going, to go gitmemek not going,

not to go

almak taking, to take almamak istemek desiring, to want, istememek

to need

Note: The syllable preceding the negative sign receives a distinct stress accent.

#### PAST DEFINITE NEGATIVE VERB FORMS

gitmedim almadım istemedim gitmedin almadın istemedin gitmedi almadı istemedi gitmedik almadık istemedik gitmediniz almadınız istemediniz gitmediler almadılar istemediler

(For meanings, see the positive forms, Lesson 5, section 3.)

#### NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE FORMS

gitme alma isteme
gitmeyin almayın istemeyin
gitmesin almasın istemesin
gitmeyiniz almayınız istemeyiniz
gitmesinler almasınlar istemesinler

(For meanings, see the positive forms, Lesson 7, section 4.)

## 2. Interrogative particle (m V4)

Turkish possesses a spoken question mark, the interrogative particle m V<sup>4</sup>. Although it conforms in vowel harmony to the preceding word, this interrogative sign is not suffixed but is an independent word to which other suffixes may be added.

The syllable before the interrogative sign receives a distinct stress accent. There is no interrogative form of the infinitive.

#### PAST DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE VERB FORMS

| buldum mu?   | istedim mi?   |  |
|--------------|---------------|--|
| buldun mu?   | istedin mi?   |  |
| buldu mu?    | istedi mi?    |  |
| bulduk mu?   | istedik mi?   |  |
| buldunuz mu? | istediniz mi? |  |
| buldular mı? | istediler mi? |  |

The second person imperatives have no interrogative forms. Those for the third person imperatives are

| Gelsin. | Let him come.      | Gelsin mi? | Should he come?  |
|---------|--------------------|------------|------------------|
|         | It would be a good |            | Wouldn't it be a |
|         | idea if he were    |            | good idea for    |
|         | to come.           |            | him to come?     |
|         |                    |            |                  |

Gelsinler. Gelsinler mi?

The interrogative sign may follow other words besides verb forms,

| Geldi mi?       | Did ne come?                  |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| O mu geldi?     | Was it he who came?           |
| Dün geldi mi?   | Did he come yesterday?        |
| Dün mü geldi?   | Did he come yesterday?        |
| Dün o mu geldi? | Was it he who came yesterday? |

## 3. Negative interrogative verb

#### PAST DEFINITE, NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE VERB FORMS

| bulmadım mı?   | istemedim mi?   |  |
|----------------|-----------------|--|
| bulmadın mı?   | istemedin mi?   |  |
| bulmadı mı?    | istemedi mi?    |  |
| bulmadık mı?   | istemedik mi?   |  |
| bulmadınız mı? | istemediniz mi? |  |
| bulmadılar mı? | istemediler mi? |  |

# THIRD PERSON IMPERATIVE, NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE FORMS gelmesin mi? gelmesinler mi?

## 4. Negative expressions

The word ne, in addition to being the interrogative 'what?' and an exclamatory word 'how very!' (ne güzel! 'how lovely!'; ne büyük! 'how large!'), also has a negative use: ne . . . ne 'neither . . . nor.' When ne . . . ne appears in a negative expression, the verb is positive.

ne sen ne ben neither you nor I

Ne sen gittin, ne ben (gittim). Neither you nor I went.

Ne Ahmedi ne Mehmedi gördüm. I saw neither Ahmet nor Mehmet.

Note: Ne sometimes serves as an interrogative (ne zaman? 'what time?' 'when?'), but the usual interrogative is hangi 'which (one)?'

hangi gün? wh hangi kız? wh

which day? what day? which girl? what girl?

Hiç means 'none,' 'nothing.' Hiç bir means 'not a.' With these negative words, a negative verb is used.

Hiç bir şey istemedi. He didn't want anything.

Hiç also means 'never.'

Kız hiç gülmedi. The girl never laughed. The girl didn't laugh at all.

Hiç gitmedi mi? Didn't he go at all? Did he never go? Didn't he

ever go?

With a positive interrogative verb, hiç means 'ever.'

Hiç İstanbula gittiniz mi? Have you ever been to Istanbul?

## Exercises

## A. Practice aloud, Translate.

- 1. Ahmet! Sen bugün mektebe gitmedin mi?
- 2. Hayır, baba. Bugün mektebe gitmedim.
- 3. Şehre gittin mi?
- 4. Hayır, baba. Bugün ne mektebe gittim ne de şehre.
- 5. O halde nereye gittin? Ne yaptın?
- 6. Bir bahçe gördüm. Bahçeye girdim.
- 7. Hangi bahçeye girdin?
- 8. Büyük bahçeye gitmedim. Küçük bahçeye girdim.

- İzmire gittiniz mi? Orada ne kadar kaldınız?
   Orada iki, iki buçuk ay kaldım.
- 10. Ahmet, iyi çocuk ol! Mektebe git! Her gün git! Çok çok çalış! Anladın mı? Anlamadın mı? Anladım, baba, anladım.
- 11. Hiç Ankaraya gittiniz mi?

Hayır, oraya hiç gitmedim. Çok gitmek istedim, fakat gitmedim. Ben Bursaya bile hiç gitmedim. Yalnız bir şehir gördüm—İstanbul. Siz Ankaraya gittiniz mi?

Evet, oraya çok gittim. İzmire gittim. Adanaya da gittim...

- 12. Adanaya kaç defa gittiniz? Adanaya mı? Oraya beş altı defa gittim. Demek siz çok seyahat ettiniz. Evet, çok seyahat ettim.
- 13. Ankarayı nasıl buldunuz? Güzel mi?Evet, Ankara güzel.Ya İstanbul?İstanbul mu? O da güzel, çok güzel.
- 14. Bugün nereden geldiniz?
  Bugün Adanadan geldim.
  Oraya hangi gün gittiniz?
  Oraya Cumartesi günü gittim.
  Adanayı nasıl buldunuz?
  Çok büyük ve çok güzel. Fakat sıcak!
- 15. Onlar sizden para istediler mi, istemediler mi? İstediler, iki yüz yetmiş beş lira istediler. İki yüz yetmiş beş lirayı onlara verdiniz mi, vermediniz mi? Vermemek istedim, fakat verdim. Dün Ahmet bana üç yüz lira verdi. Bugün onlara iki yüz yetmiş beş lirayı verdim.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. Has Ahmet gone?
  - 2. Was it Ahmet who went?
  - 3. Did they give you the book? No, they didn't.
  - 4. Has Selma seen the two boys? Yes, she has.
  - 5. Why didn't you give us the money? Didn't you want to?
  - 6. I gave the money to Erdoğan yesterday. Haven't you seen him?
- 7. Should they come or not?
- 8. Why shouldn't Ahmet come?

- 9. She drank neither coffee nor tea.
- 10. Fahrünnisa drank nothing at all.
- 11. Did they ever go to Ankara?
- 12. Have you ever been to Ankara?
- 13. Did they come from Izmir?
- 14. No, they didn't come from there. They came from Adana.
- 15. Have you given Father the newspaper?
- 16. Yes, I have given it to him.
- 17. What did you find in the room?
- 18. I didn't find anything there.
- 19. Don't let him put either the cheese or the sugar into that box!
- 20. Should Ahmet read the newspaper or not?

# Lesson 10

## The Possessive Construction

- I. çocuğum
- 2. oğlun
- 3. oğlu
- 4. Ahmedin oğlu
- 5. çocuklarımız
- 6. oğlunuz
- 7. oğullarınız
- 8. Ahmedin oğulları
- 9. cocuğumun kitabı
- 10. Çocuğumun kitabını kim aldı?
- II. oğlunun kitapları
- Oğlunun kitaplarını hiç görmedik.
- 13. Ahmedin oğlunun kitapları nerede?
- 14. Ahmedin oğullarının büyük kitabını nereye koydular?
- 15. radyo sahibi
- 16. radvonun sahibi
- 17. O adam ev sahibi mi?
- 18. Bu evin sahibi o adam mı?
- 19. Ankara Bulvarı İstanbulda mı?
- 20. Ankaranın bulvarları ne güzel!
- 21. Ev sahibinizin radyosunu kimin otomobiline koydular?

my child

your son

his son

Ahmet's son

our children

your son

your sons

Ahmet's sons

my child's book

Who took my son's book?

your son's books

We have never seen your son's books.

Where are Ahmet's boy's books?

Where have they put the big book of Ahmet's sons?

radio owner

owner of the radio

Is that man (a) house owner?

Is the owner of this house that man?

Is Ankara Boulevard in Istanbul?

Ankara's main streets are certainly

lovely!

Whose car did they put your land-lord's radio into?

## 1. The possessive construction

In possession, two elements are involved: A—the possessor; and B—what is possessed.

A B B A

John's book the book of John

In Turkish, the two substantives (A and B) are 'welded' into a grammatical relationship. They always stand in the order A—B. The first substantive A (the possessor) is here termed 'first member.' The second substantive B (the thing possessed) is termed the 'second member.'

The essential element which always joins the two members is a suffix added to the second member. This is here called the possessive suffix.

Still another suffix may be essential to the possessive construction. This suffix is added to the first member and is called the possessive definite suffix.

Hence the technical terms which the student should bear in mind in order to understand the possessive construction are:

| 1. first member               | possessor (A), to this a suffix may be added                                       |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 2. second member              | thing possessed (B), to this a suffix must be added                                |
| 3. possessive definite suffix | suffix which may be added to first member  |
| 4. possessive suffix          | suffix which must be added to second member  |
| 5. possessive construction    | possessor (A), thing possessed (B), and the suffixes as required by the situation. |

Those possessive constructions whose first members bear the possessive definite suffix are here called Type I. Those possessive constructions whose first members bear no possessive definite suffix are called Type II. Ordinarily, no word may intervene between the first and second members of a Type II construction. Words may intervene between the members of a Type I construction.

## 2. Possessive definite suffix: -(n) V4 n

This suffix -(n) V<sup>4</sup> n is added directly to the singular or plural. Its meaning is that of English 's attached to a definite substantive, but this suffix is not

the essential element in the Turkish expression of possession. Instead, it shows that the possessor is definite.

| ev        | (the) house | hah       | (the) rug          |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|
| evin      | the house's | halının   | the rug's          |
| evlerin   | the houses' | halıların | the rugs'          |
| ayak      | (the) foot  | bu        | this (substantive) |
| ayağın    | the foot's  | bunun     | of this            |
| ayakların | the feet's  | bunların  | of these           |

The pronoun forms are

| benim (no | ote the first person | bizim (not | te the first person |
|-----------|----------------------|------------|---------------------|
| sui       | ffix) my             | suff       | ix) our             |
| senin     | your                 | sizin      | your                |
| onun      | his, her, its        | onların    | their               |

The buffer consonant with su 'water' is y rather than n.

| su    | (the) water | sular   | (the) water(s) |
|-------|-------------|---------|----------------|
| suyun | the water's | suların | the waters'    |

## 3. Possessive suffixes

There is a possessive suffix for each person, singular and plural. That of the third person singular is -(s)  $V^4$ ; that of the third person plural is -1  $V^2$  r i/1. These third person possessive suffixes translate (awkwardly) as 'of him,' 'of her,' 'of it,' 'of them.'

The possessive suffixes for all persons are

## singular

| 1st person | -(V4) m             | of me        |
|------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 2nd person | -(V4) n             | of you       |
| 3rd person | -(s) V <sup>4</sup> | of him, etc. |

## plural

| 1st person | -(V4) m V4 z            | of us   |
|------------|-------------------------|---------|
| 2nd person | -(V4) n V4 z            | of you  |
| 3rd person | -l V <sup>2</sup> r i/1 | of them |

Note: When an originally Arabic noun with a final 'ayn (see Lesson 6, section 5) receives a third singular possessive suffix, the result may be

| camii       | mosque of him                               |
|-------------|---|
| (or) camisi | mosque of him (This form is more in vogue.) |

## 4. Types I and II possessive constructions

TYPE I

FIRST MEMBER

SECOND MEMBER

çocuğun

of the child, the child's

i.e., (the) garden of the child

bahcesi

(the) garden of him

çocuğun

of the child, the child's

i.e., (the) gardens of the child

bahçeleri

(the) gardens of him

cocukların

of the children, the children's

bahçeleri

garden(s) of them

i.e., (the) garden(s) of the children

Note that this last example is ambiguous. The word bahçeleri may be the singular (bahçe) plus the third plural possessive suffix (-leri) required by the first member (cocukların), i.e., bahçe-leri. If so, the words cocukların bahçeleri mean '(the) garden of the children.' But the word bahceleri may also be the plural (bahçeler) plus the third plural possessive suffix (-leri) required by the first member (cocukların). Two plural suffixes never come on the same noun: hence the logically expectable bahçe-ler-leri does not occur. Thus çocukların bahçeleri may mean both

> (the) garden of the children (the) gardens of the children

The ambiguity may be resolved in one of two ways: the context is left to show whether one or more gardens is intended; a singular possessive suffix is given the second member, even though the first member is plural; cocuklarin bahçesi, '(the) garden of the children,' in which 'garden' is indubitably singular.

Type II

FIRST MEMBER

SECOND MEMBER

cocuk

bahçesi

child (or) children

(the) garden of him, (the) garden of them

i.e., (the) child-garden, children-garden, kindergarten, children's park, playground

çocuk

bahceleri

child (or) children

(the) gardens of him, (the) gardens of them

i.e., (the) child-gardens, children-gardens, kindergartens, playgrounds

## A comparison of the two types of possessive construction

I. cocuğun bahçesi (the) garden of the child
II. cocuk bahçesi (the) child-garden

demonstrates the essential difference in meaning between the two types. That difference turns on the definiteness or indefiniteness of the first member.

In Type I the first member is always definite. Thus the possessive definite suffix, like the objective definite suffix (see Lesson 6, section 2), may be called a sort of definite article in a specialized use. The student should note, however, that by express stipulation the first member of a Type I possessive construction may become indefinite.

|         | iyi bir çocuğun büyük bir bahçesi | a large garden of a (or one) good child |
|---------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Compare | iyi çocuğun büyük bir bahçesi     | a large garden of the good child        |
| and     | iyi çocuğun büyük bahçesi         | (the) large garden of<br>the good child |

In a Type II possessive construction the first member is not definite. Instead, as in the possessive construction *cocuk bahçesi*, a singular first member frequently is used collectively or generically—here in the sense of any and all children. This phenomenon, the fact that a singular may have a generic or collective (plural) meaning, is very frequent in Turkish.

Type II serves where English would use an adjective of nationality.

Türk lisanı (the) Turkish language Türk alfabesi (the) Turkish alphabet

## 5. Personal pronouns as members of possessive constructions

A possessive construction whose first member is a personal pronoun is Type I because personal pronouns are definite. The personal pronoun (the first member) need not be expressed unless it is desired to emphasize the possessor's identity.

bahçem my garden benim bahçem my garden

In informal speech incomplete possessive constructions of the first and second person (possessive suffix omitted) are not infrequent.

bizim bahçe our garden (for bahçemiz)
sizin bahçe your garden (for bahçeniz)

## 6. Possessive complexes

A possessive construction (i.e., the complete construction with all its suffixes) may itself serve as first or second member of another possessive construction. Such a possessive relationship—one or both of whose members may themselves consist of one (or more) possessive constructions—is called a possessive complex.

Type I

FIRST MEMBER

SECOND MEMBER

(benim) çocuğumun

bahçesi

(of me) of the child of me

(the) garden of him

i.e., (the) garden of the child of me, (the) garden of my child, my child's garden

The Type I unit (benim çocuğum) becomes the first member of the Type I complex. The first member (cocuğum) must have a possessive definite suffix: cocuğumun.

TYPE II

FIRST MEMBER

SECOND MEMBER

Ankara

çocuk bahçesi

of Ankara

(the) kindergarten (of it)

i.e., (the) Ankara Kindergarten or Nursery School (name of an institution)

The Type II unit (cocuk bahçesi) becomes the second member of the possessive complex (Ankara cocuk bahçesi). The second member of the Type II complex (the unit cocuk bahçesi) already has a possessive suffix (bahçe-si). No word may bear more than one possessive suffix. Hence the -si of bahçesi does double duty, serving (a) as possessive suffix for the Type II possessive construction cocuk bahçesi, and (b) as possessive suffix for the possessive complex, Ankara cocuk bahçesi, '(the) Ankara Kindergarten.'

Compare

Ankaranın

çocuk bahçesi

of Ankara

(the) kindergarten of it

i.e., Ankara's kindergarten

Ankaranın

çocuk bahçeleri

of Ankara

(the) kindergartens of it

i.e., Ankara's kindergartens

İstanbul Caddesi

Istanbul Avenue

Ankara Bulvarı

Ankara Boulevard

İstanbulun güzel caddeleri Ankaranın büyük bulyarları Istanbul's lovely avenues Ankara's great boulevards Some expressions (mostly place-names) which were originally Type II possessive constructions tend to lose the possessive suffix.

Arnavutköy Albanian Village (name of a part of Istanbul); older form, Arnavutköyü

Other place-names always retain the possessive suffix

Beyoğlu Bey's-son (name of the downtown section of Istanbul)

In the case of a noun whose absolute form ends in a vowel, note the 'disappearance' of the third person possessive suffix when its possessive form becomes a member of a possessive complex.

| yatak odası<br>(benim) yatak odam<br>(senin) yatak odan<br>onun yatak odası | bedroom my bedroom your bedroom his bedroom |
|---|---|
| (bizim) yatak odamız  | our bedroom                                 |
| (sizin) yatak odanız  | your bedroom                                |
| onların yatak odası   | their bedroom                               |
| (benim) yatak odalarım  | my bedrooms                                 |
| (senin) yatak odaların  | your bedrooms                               |
| onun yatak odaları  | his bedrooms                                |
| (bizim) yatak odalarımız  | our bedrooms                                |
| (sizin) yatak odalarımz   | your bedrooms                               |
| onların yatak odaları   | their bedrooms                              |

## 7. The word sahip in possessive constructions

The student should avoid the logical pitfall involved when the word sahip (sahibi 'owner,' 'possessor,' 'master') is used in possessive constructions. Despite its meaning, this word is not the first member (possessor), but the second member (thing possessed).

| Α         | В     | В         | Α          |
|-----------|-------|-----------|------------|
| John's    | book  | the book  | of John    |
| the rug's | owner | the owner | of the rug |
| evamples  |       |           |            |

Study these examples

| ı. halının sahibi         | (the) owner of the rug        |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 2. halının bir sahibi     | one (an) owner of the rug     |
| 3. bir halının bir sahibi | an (one) owner of a (one) rug |
| 4. halıların sahibi       | (the) owner of the rugs       |
| 5. halıların bir sahibi   | an (one) owner of the rugs    |

6. halı sahibi (the) rug owner
7. bir halı sahibi a (one) rug owner
8. halı sahipleri (the) rug owners
9. halının iki sahibi (the) two owners of the rug

10. iki halı sahibi (the) two rug owners

## 8. Suffixes added to a possessive suffix

When other suffixes are added to the possessive suffixes, no phonetic buffer is needed after the possessive suffixes of the first and second persons.

Bahçemi gördüler. They saw my garden.
Otomobillerimi istediler. They wanted my cars.
(senin) Kitabını aldılar. They took your book.
(senin) Kitaplarını okudular. They read your books.

Paramızı buldular. They found our money.

Evlerimizi gördüler. They have seen our houses.

(sizin) Çocuğunuzu gördük. We saw your child.

(sizin) Cocuklarınızı gördü. He saw your children.

When other suffixes are added to a third person possessive suffix, singular or plural, a buffer consonant is needed. This buffer—n—is inserted not only when required by an immediately suffixed vowel, but also before a following locative or ablative suffix.

Bahçesini gördüler. They have seen his garden.
(onun) Bahçelerini gördüler. They saw his gardens.
Onların bahçesini gördük. We have seen their garden.
Unların bahçelerini gördük. We have seen their gardens.

Study the following examples.

büyük.

I. Babasının evi İstanbulda. His father's home is in Istanbul.

2. Kız annesine güldü. The girl laughed at her mother.
3. Senin kitabım bulmadı. He didn't find your book.

3. Senin kitabım bulmadı. He didn't find your book
4. Kitabını buldu. He found his book.

. Kitabini buldu. He found his book.

5. Evinde iki çocuk buldular. They found two children in his house.

6. İki çocuğu senin evinde buldum. I found the two children in your house.

7. İstanbul şehrinden Ankara He had come from Istanbul (city) şehrine geldi. to Ankara (city).

8. Onun kız kardeşlerinin evi His sisters' house is large.

- Senin kız kardeşlerinin evi büyük.
- Onların kız kardeşlerinin evi büyük.
- II. Onların babasının evi büyük.
- 12. Çocuklar annelerine baktılar.
- 13. Kitaplarını bulmadılar.
- 14. Senin kitaplarını bulmadılar.
- 15. Parayı evlerinde buldu.
- 16. Parayı onların evinde buldu.
- 17. Parayı Ahmedin ceplerinde buldu.
- 18. Parayı senin ceplerinde buldu.
- Çocuklarımz dün sabah
   Ahmedin annesinin evinde iki saat kaldılar.
- Küçük oğlunuzun ceplerinde
   Ahmedin babasının beş lirasını buldum.

Your sisters' house is large.

Their sisters' house is large.

Their father's house is large.

The children looked at their mothers.

They didn't find their books.

They didn't find your books.

He found the money in their houses (or house).

He found the money in their house. He found the money in Ahmet's

pockets.

He found the money in your (one person's) pockets.

Yesterday morning your children stayed two hours at Ahmet's mother's house.

I found Ahmed's father's five liras in your little son's pockets.

## 9. Kendi

The word kendi 'self' is much used with possessive constructions.

1. to mean 'own' (modifies second member)

kendi kitabın
kendi kitabı
kendi kitabı
kendi kitabımız
kendi kitabınız
kendi kitapları
kendi kitaplarım
kendi kitapların
(onun) kendi kitapları
kendi kitaplarımız
kendi kitaplarınız

my own book
your own book
his (her or its) own book
our own book
your own book
their own books
my own books
your own books
his own books
our own books
your own books
their own books

#### 2. to form the emphatic personal pronoun

(ben) kendim I myself (biz) kendimiz (sen) kendin (siz) kendiniz (o) kendisi (onlar) kendileri

Note: Kendi kendine geldi. He came of his own accord.

Kendine geldi. He came to (regained consciousness).

## Exercises

#### A. Practice aloud, Translate.

#### SIMPLE POSSESSIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

- I. Ahmedin annesi çok genç.
- 2. Eviniz nerede?
- 3. Çocuğun babası geldi.
- 4. Baban kim?
- 5. Şehrin suyu çok iyi.
- 6. Onların babası buraya gelsin!
- 7. Babaları oraya gitmesinler!
- 8. Kitabınız bu mu?
- 9. Halı sahibi parayı aldı.
- 10. Kimin elması bu?
- 11. Türk alfabesi kolay.
- 12. Türk lisam güç mü?
- 13. Bahçeniz çok büyük mü?
- 14. Ankara Bulvarı güzel.
- 15. Ankaranın bulvarları ne güzel!
- 16. Yatak odanız küçük mü?
- 17. Ders odamiz sicak.
- 18. O kadın otomobil sahibi mi?
- 19. Ev sahibi nerede?
- 20. Bu evin sahibi kim?
- 21. Kendi kitabım evde.
- 22. Parayı ev sahibi istemedi.
- 23. Salı günü geldiler.
- 24. Çay fincanları nerede?
- 25. Bu ders kitabı çok büyük.

#### Possessive complexes, etc.

- I. Babamzın gözleri güzel.
- 2. Şehrimizin ağaçları çok büyük.

- 3. Ahmedin iki oğlu geldiler.
- 4. Küçük çocuğun annesi çabuk gelsin!
- 5. Ev sahibinin radyosu çok güzel.
- 6. Ev sahibiniz nerede?
- 7. Arkadaşınızın annesinin evi büyük.
- 8. Kızımın arkadaşları bugün buraya gelmesinler!
- 9. Kimin babasının evi bu?
- 10. Oğlunuzun ismi ne?
- II. Ev sahiplerinin ismini bilmediler mi?
- 12. Ahmedin cocuklarına kim baksın?
- 13. Beyoğlunun caddelerinden geçtim.
- Kızkardeşimin yatak odasına ne onun kitaplarını koydum ne kendi kitaplarımı.
- 15. Kitaplarımı almadılar mı?
- 16. Babanızın parasını o çocukların annesine vermeyiniz!
- 17. Ankara çocuk bahçesinde kimi gördünüz?
- 18. Oğlumu ve Ahmedin iki kızını görmediniz mi?
- 19. Benim çocuğumdan bir kitap aldılar.
- 20. Çanakkaleden Boğaziçine gitti.
- 21. Beyoğluna ne zaman gittiler?
- 22. Hiç Toros dağlarını gördünüz mü?
- 23. Arkadaşının kitabını istemedi.
- 24. Kendi kitabım istedi.
- 25. Evime gelme! Arkadaşımı evine git!

#### B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- 1. Whom did you find in our classroom?
- 2. Ahmet's mother went into the boys' bedroom.
- 3. My brother's landlord put his car into my father's garage.
- 4. The automobile went from Beyoğlu to Istanbul University.
- 5. The steamer passed through the Dardanelles.
- 6. Your little sister's teacups are pretty.
- 7. My landlord's own house is on Istanbul Street.
- 8. Your son's feet are large.
- 9. What is your little brother's name?
- 10. Why didn't Ahmet's sister go to your sisters' house last night?
- 11. Have you ever been to Beyoğlu?
- 12. Ahmet had never seen the Black Sea, but he had seen the Sea of Marmara.
- 13. They gave my mother's money to the sisters of Mehmet and Erdoğan.

- 14. He left the small classroom and went into the big one.
- 15. Istanbul city is very old. Ankara city is new.
- 16. The new Turkish alphabet is easy.
- 17. Don't ever go there.
- 18. The Bosporus is very beautiful. The Dardanelles are beautiful, too.
- 19. Have you ever seen the Dardanelles?
- 20. Didn't you go to the Dardanelles yesterday?
- 21. The car passed through the streets of Beyoğlu. It did not go through Karaköy.
- 22. Her father's house is in Afyonkarahisar.
- 23. Is this man a car owner?
- 24. The owner of the large automobile gave ten liras to the brother of the man who owns that house.
- 25. Whose books did you take from my friend's father's car?

# Lesson 11

## Infinitives. General Verbs

| т |   | eve | girm    | ٥k |
|---|---|-----|---------|----|
| 1 | ۰ | CVC | ZII III | CN |

- 2. Ahmedin eve girmesi
- 3. kızkardeşinizin evimize gelmemesi
- 4. Okumayı çok sever.
- 5. O kitabı okumadan size verdim.
- 6. Oraya gitmek çok güç.
- 7. Oraya gitmemiz güç.
- 8. İngilizcede bu söz ne demek?
- 9. Onu görmeye geldiler.
- 10. Gitmek istemedi.
- II. Gitmemek istedi.
- 12. Yüzmek istedi.
- 13. Yüzmek bilmez.
- 14. Türkçe bilir misiniz?
- 15. İngilizce bilmezler mi?
- 16. Çocuklar şeker severler.
- 17. Kedi köpekten korkar.
- 18. Postacı günde iki defa gelir.

- to enter the house, action of entering the house
- Ahmet's entering the house, the fact that Ahmet did (has, does, or will) enter the house
- the fact that your sister did (has, does, or will) not come to our house

He greatly likes reading.

- I gave you that book without having read it.
- Going there is very difficult. It's very difficult to go there.

It's hard for us to go there.

What does this word mean in English?

They came in order to see him.

He didn't want to go.

He wanted not to go.

He wanted to swim.

He doesn't know how to swim.

Do you know Turkish?

Don't they know English?

Children like candy.

Cats are afraid of dogs.

The mailman comes twice a day.

19. Cay sever misiniz?

20. Ben eve gelir gelmez size telefon ettim.

Do you like tea?

As soon as I got home I phoned you.

### 1. Infinitives

The common infinitive (see Lesson 5, section 1) seldom has suffixes added to it. The light infinitive—the common infinitive minus its final k—frequently receives suffixes.

#### LIGHT INFINITIVE

|                             | POSITIVE       |  | NEG  | ATIVE  |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--|--|--|
|                             | gelme<br>gitme | coming going   | gelmeme<br>gitmeme   | not coming not going                                   |
| (onun) gitmesi              |                |  |  | going; the fact that he one), does, or will go         |
| (onun) gitn                 | nemesi         |  | ` ' '  | not going; the fact that he one), does, or will not go |
| babanızın Ankaraya gitmesi  |                | that your  | going to Ankara; the fact<br>father did go, has gone,<br>will go to Ankara |  |
| annenizin evimize gelmemesi |                | your mother's not coming to our house (to us); the fact that your mother didn't, hasn't, doesn't, or won't come to our house |  |  |
|                             |                |  |  |  |

The light infinitive may be used as a modifier.

dolma kalem fountain pen (dolmak 'to fill')

With the ablative suffix, the light infinitive means 'without (doing so and so),' 'without (having done so and so).'

Kitabi dün aldı. Bu sabah onu He took the book yesterday. This okumadan bana verdi. morning, without having read it, he gave (it) to me.

Note: Some grammarians discuss this under the heading of a separate suffix, -madan/-meden.

The light infinitive is usually used when an infinitive is the object of another verb form.

O okumayı çok sever. He greatly likes reading (really loves to read).

Note: The verbs *istemek* 'wish,' 'want,' 'need' and *bilmek* 'know' frequently take a common infinitive as object.

Gitmek istedi. He wanted to go.
Gelmek bilmedi. He never arrived.

The common infinitive, without suffixes, may be the subject of the verb 'to be,' or the subject of a predicate adjective when 'be' is not expressed.

Oraya gitmek güç(tür). To go there (is) difficult. compare Oraya gitmemiz güç(tür). Our going there (is) difficult.

For the syllable in parenthesis (tür) see the forms of the verb 'to be,' Lesson 14, section 1.

The English 'to mean' is expressed by the common infinitive *demek* plus the (usually unexpressed present tense of the) verb 'to be.'

Bu ne demek(tir)? What does this mean? (This [is] to say what?)

*İngilizcede* girl 'kız' demek(tir). In English 'girl' means kız. The English 'that is to say' is also expressed by demek.

Demek, bunu bilmediler. That is to say, they didn't know this.

The infinitives—common or light—may govern the objective definite suffix, or other appropriate suffixes, on preceding substantives, just as do finite verb forms.

Ankaraya gitmemeniz iyi oldu. The fact that you didn't go to Ankara turned out to be a good thing.

The common infinitive with the suffix -s i/1 z i/1 n means 'without (doing so and so),' 'without having (done so and so).'

Ahmet, kitabımı okumaksızın Ahmet went to Ankara without reading Ankaraya gitti. (without having read) my book.

The common infinitive with the following combination of two suffixes—(1) the ablative suffix and (2) the conditional suffix (see Lesson 20, section 4)—means 'rather than (doing so and so).'

Sinemaya gitmektense okumayı Rather than go to the movies, I tercih ettim. preferred to read.

### 2. General verbs

The general verb forms express what is always true and hence timeless (aorist). This is the time value of these English verbs.

Mice like cheese.

Children will fight.

The postman comes each day.

#### **POSITIVE**

The positive general verb forms are made by adding these suffixes to the verb stem.

|     | SINGULAR                   | PLURAL                                      |
|-----|----------------------------|---|
| Ist | -(GV) r V <sup>4</sup> m   | -(GV) r V <sup>4</sup> z                    |
| 2nd | -(GV) r s V <sup>4</sup> n | -(GV) r s V <sup>4</sup> n V <sup>4</sup> z |
| 3rd | -(GV) r                    | -(GV) r l V <sup>2</sup> r                  |

The symbol GV represents the 'general verb form vowel' (general vowel).

- a. A verb whose stem ends in a vowel takes no general vowel.
- b. A monosyllabic verb stem ending in a consonant takes V<sup>2</sup> as the general vowel. This 'rule,' however, has many exceptions. General vowels are sometimes shown in dictionaries thus:

| almak (alır)   | to take |
|----------------|---------|
| bulmak (bulur) | to find |
| görmek (görür) | to see  |
| gelmek (gelir) | to come |

c. A polysyllabic verb stem ending in a consonant takes V<sup>4</sup> as the general vowel.

The general verb forms express general validity, and habitual or customary action. Since what is always true will also be true in the future, the general also may be used as a future tense. It may also be used to express an intention on the speaker's part, a promise of sorts.

The positive general forms are

|     | SINGULAR |                          | PLURAL     |
|-----|----------|--------------------------|------------|
| Ist | giderim  | I go, always go, will go | gideriz    |
| 2nd | gidersin |                          | gidersiniz |
| 3rd | gider    |                          | giderler   |

The positive interrogative forms are

| SINGULAR |              | PLURAL         |  |
|----------|--------------|----------------|--|
| ıst      | gider miyim? | gider miyiz?   |  |
| 2nd      | gider misin? | gider misiniz? |  |
| 3rd      | gider mi?    | giderler mi?   |  |

In the second person plural, these forms are the most polite of all ways to express a command in Turkish.

Lûtfen, kitabınızı bana verir misiniz?

Will you please give me your book? (or) Please give me your book.

### NEGATIVE

The negative general verb forms are made by suffixing to the (positive) verb stem these suffixes

| SINGULAR                    | PLURAL   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| -m V <sup>2</sup> m         | -m V <sup>2</sup> y i/1 z  |
| -m V <sup>2</sup> z s i/1 n | -m V <sup>2</sup> z s i/1 n i/1 z  |
| -m V <sup>2</sup> z         | -m V <sup>2</sup> z 1 V <sup>2</sup> r   |
| gitmem                      | gitmeyiz   |
| gitmezsin                   | gitmezsiniz  |
| gitmez                      | gitmezler  |
|                             | -m V <sup>2</sup> m<br>-m V <sup>2</sup> z s i/1 n<br>-m V <sup>2</sup> z<br>gitmem<br>gitmezsin |

The negative interrogative general verb forms are

| SINGULAR |               | PLURAL          |  |
|----------|---------------|-----------------|--|
| Ist      | gülmez miyim? | gülmez miyiz?   |  |
| 2nd      | gülmez misin? | gülmez misiniz? |  |
| 3rd      | gülmez mi?    | gülmezler mi?   |  |

The third singular positive and negative general verb forms (the general participles, see Lesson 16, section 2) are used, the one immediately following the other, to express the idea of 'as soon as.'

| Buraya gelir gelmez parayı alınız. | As soon as you come (get) here, |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|                                    | take the money.                 |

| Buraya gelir gelmez parayı aldım. | As soon as I got here, I took the |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                                   | money.                            |

| Ahmet buraya gelir gelmez | As soon as Ahmet got here, |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Mehmet parayı aldı.       | Mehmet took the money.     |

### NOTE:

| ister istemez          | want to or not, willy-nilly             |
|------------------------|---|
| İster istemez, gitsin. | Let him go, whether he wants to or not. |

## Exercises

### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- 1. Evimize gelmenizi çok isteriz, efendim. Sizi bekleriz, efendim, bekleriz.
- 2. New York'a gitmek çok para ister.

- 3. Selmanın Fahrünnisanın bütün kahve fincanlarını kırması ne fena(dır)!
- 4. Baba, ben sinemaya giderim.

Ahmet, ders kitabını okudun mu? Dersin hazır mı?

Okudum, baba, okudum, İki defa okudum,

Ne dersin Selma, cocuk bu akşam sinemaya gitsin mi, gitmesin mi?

Gitsin, Mehmet, gitsin, Neden gitmesin?

Pekivi, gitsin, Simdi git, Ahmet, Amma gec kalma!

Teşekkür ederim, baba. Sana da teşekkür ederim, anne. Geç kalmam.

- 5. Bu ne demek, Ahmet? Türkçe dersinde yalnız altı numara aldın. Ne oldu? Çalışmadın mı? Çok çok çalış. Zaten, hayatta daima çalışmak lâzım(dır). Anladın mı, anlamadın mı? Anladım, baba. Çalışırım. Çok çalışırım.
- 6. Bir cav icer misiniz, bevefendi?

Hayır, teşekkür ederim. Ben hiç çay içmem.

O halde bir kahve olmaz mı, efendim?

Teşekkür ederim, hanımefendi. Lûtfen, bir kahve verir misiniz?

- 7. Ahmet Bey, çay içmektense kahve içmeyi tercih etti.
- 8. Ahmet ders kitabının bir kelimesini anlamaksızın okudu.
- 9. Yolunuz açık olsun, Ahmet Bey!
- 10. Mehmet her sabah evimize gelir. Ağabeyisi Erdoğan da gelsin!
- Otobüslerde paralarımızı biletçilere veririz, biletlerimizi onların ellerinden alırız.
- 12. Ahmet Bey her sabah kahvaltı yapar, gazeteyi okur ve bürosuna gider.
- 13. Selma Hanım her sabah kahvaltı yapar, eve bakar ve çarşıya gider.
- 14. Ahmet Bey öğle yemeğini bir lokantada yer.
- 15. Cay içer misiniz?
- 16. Hayır efendim, hiç çay içmem.
- 17. Selim Bey Fransızca iyi bilir. İstanbul Üniversitesinde üç buçuk sene Fransızca okudu.
- 18. Ahmet geldi mi, gelmedi mi?
- 19. Henüz gelmedi. Fakat gelir, efendim, gelir.
- 20. Bu tren istasyondan saat sekizde kalkar.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. Will Selma drink a glass of milk?
- 2. Thank you, madam. Selma never drinks milk. Would you please give her a glass of water?
- 3. Rather than drinking milk, Selma prefers to drink water.
- 4. Yesterday morning in the Covered Bazaar Ahmet Bey saw two lovely rugs.

- 5. He wanted to buy them both.
- 6. The rug owner asked 2,000 liras for the small one and 5,000 liras for the large.
- 7. Ahmet Bey said, 'That is very high. I will give 4,500 liras for the two.'
- 8. Without waiting a single moment, the man said, 'No. I want 7,000 liras for the two of them.'
- 9. As a result, Ahmet Bey left the Covered Bazaar without having bought the rugs.
- 10. As soon as he returned home, his wife said, 'Well, did you buy (a) rug?'
- 11. 'No, I didn't buy (one). The rug man wanted 7,000 liras for two nice rugs. I left the bazaar without buying the rugs,' he said.
- 12. 'Too bad,' said his wife.
- 13. 'A pity,' said Ahmet Bey, 'but he wanted 7,000 liras. I found that very expensive.'
- 14. His wife said, 'But I wanted a new rug!'
- 15. 'Yes, dear,' Ahmet Bey said. 'I'll try to find a nice rug.'

# Lesson 12

Past General Verbs. Future Verbs. Adverbs.

Comparison. Emphatics. The Suffix -ç/c V<sup>2</sup>

- I. 1953 senesinde Ahmet Bey Ankaraya haftada iki defa gider miydi?
- 2. 1954 senesinde de oraya haftada iki defa gitmez miydi?
- O yazarın kitaplarını çok severdim.
- 4. Kızımız çok iyi dans eder.
- 5. Oğlum benden uzun(dur).
- Selma kızkardeşinden (daha) güzel(dir).
- En küçüğü, yani en az büyüğü istediler.
- 8. Yavaş yavaş öğreneceksiniz.
- Saçları bir gecede bembeyaz oldu.
- 10. Ya siz—siz de gitmiyecek misiniz?
- II. Bence, Ahmet Bey yarın gelmiyecek. Öbür gün gelecek.
- 12. Çocuğun kaç sene okudu?
- 13. Aman! Senelerce, kardeşim, senelerce!

In 1953 did Ahmet Bey ordinarily go to Ankara twice a week?

Didn't he also regularly go there twice weekly in 1954?

I used to be very fond of that writer's books.

Our daughter dances very well.

My son is taller than I am.

Selma is prettier than her sister.

They wanted the very smallest one, i.e., the least large one.

Step by step, you'll learn.

Her hair turned snow white over night.

And you, aren't you going to go, either?

It's my opinion that Ahmet Bey won't come tomorrow. He'll come the day after tomorrow.

How long did your child study?

My goodness! Years and years, my friend, years and years!

- 14. Ne dersiniz, beyefendi, çocuklar geç kalacaklar mı, kalmıyacaklar mı?
- Her halde geç kalacaklar.
   Zaten onlar daima geç kalırlar.

What's your opinion, sir; will the youngsters be late or not?

They will probably be late. For that matter, they are always late.

## 1. Past general verbs

There is a past general verb meaning 'used to (do so and so).' It is formed by adding to the third singular positive general form, the suffixes of the past forms of the verb 'to be' (see Lesson 14, section 1), as follows (the vowel in this suffix is V4).

|          | POSITIVE          |            | NEGATIVE               |                |
|----------|-------------------|------------|------------------------|----------------|
| singular |                   |            |                        |                |
| Ist      | giderdim I u      | ised to go | gitmezdim I i          | used not to go |
| 2nd      | giderdin          |            | gitmezdin              |                |
| 3rd      | giderdi           |            | gitmezdi               |                |
| plural   |                   |            |                        |                |
| ıst      | giderdik          |            | gitmezdik              |                |
| 2nd      | giderdiniz        |            | gitmezdiniz            |                |
| 3rd      | giderlerdi        |            | gitmezlerdi            |                |
| PC       | SITIVE INTERROGAT | TIVE       | NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE | /E             |
| singular |                   |            |                        |                |
| ıst      | gider miydim?     | Did I used | gitmez miydim?         | Didn't I used  |
|          |                   | to go?     |                        | to go?         |
| 2nd      | gider miydin?     |            | gitmez miydin?         |                |
| 3rd      | gider miydi?      |            | gitmez miydi?          |                |
| plural   |                   |            |                        |                |
| ıst      | gider miydik?     |            | gitmez miydik?         |                |
| 2nd      | gider miydiniz?   |            | gitmez miydiniz?       |                |
| 3rd      | giderler miydi?   |            | gitmezler miydi?       |                |
| 5.4      | 8                 |            | B                      |                |

### 2. Future verbs

The future verb forms express a definite intention which the speaker holds as of the time he speaks. As a promise it is more forceful than the general tense.

The suffixes of the positive future verb forms are

|     | SINGULAR   | PLURAL  |
|-----|--|---|
| ıst | -(y) V2 c V2 ğ i/1 m                             | -(y) V <sup>2</sup> c V <sup>2</sup> ğ i/1 z                        |
| 2nd | -(y) V <sup>2</sup> c V <sup>2</sup> k s i/1 n   | -(y) V <sup>2</sup> c V <sup>2</sup> k s i/1 n i/1 z                |
| 3rd | -(y) V <sup>2</sup> c V <sup>2</sup> k (t i/1 r) | -(y) V <sup>2</sup> c V <sup>2</sup> k l V <sup>2</sup> r (d i/1 r) |

When the syllable -t/d i/1 r (see Lesson 14, section 1) is added to the third person singular or plural, the force of the assertion is somewhat strengthened.

Verb stems which end in e or a change the final e to i and the final a to i before the immediately following (buffer) y of the future suffixes.

|     | SINGULAR       |                               | PLURAL            |
|-----|----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| ıst | gideceğim      | I shall go. I am going to go. | gideceğiz         |
| 2nd | gideceksin     |                               | gideceksiniz      |
| 3rd | gidecek(tir)   |                               | gidecekler(dir)   |
| 1st | bulacağım      | I shall find (it).            | bulacağız         |
| 2nd | bulacaksın     |                               | bulacaksınız      |
| 3rd | bulacak(tır)   |                               | bulacaklar(dır)   |
| 1st | anlıyacağım    | I shall understand (it).      | anlıyacağız       |
| 2nd | anlıyacaksın   |                               | anlıyacaksınız    |
| 3rd | anlıyacak(tır) |                               | anlıyacaklar(dır) |

Note that before the immediately following (buffer) y of the future suffixes, a final vowel  $V^2$  becomes the variable vowel i/1.

The future interrogative forms are

|     | SINGULAR           |                               | PLURAL                |
|-----|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ıst | gidecek miyim?     | Shall I go? Am I going to go? | gidecek miyiz?        |
| 2nd | gidecek misin?     |                               | gidecek misiniz?      |
| 3rd | gidecek mi(dir)?   |                               | gidecekler mi(dir)?   |
| 1st | bulacak mıyım?     | Shall I find (it)?            | bulacak mıyız?        |
| 2nd | bulacak mısın?     |                               | bulacak mısınız?      |
| 3rd | bulacak mı(dır)?   |                               | bulacaklar mı(dır)?   |
| ıst | anlıyacak mıyım?   | Shall I understand (it)?      | anlıyacak mıyız?      |
| 2nd | anlıyacak mısın?   |                               | anlıyacak mısınız?    |
| 3rd | anlıyacak mı(dır)? |                               | anlıyacaklar mı(dır)? |

### The future negative forms are

| 1.11 | ic fature negative for | ins are                              |                        |
|------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
|      | SINGULAR               |                                      | PLURAL                 |
| Ist  | gitmiyeceğim           | I shall not go.                      | gitmiyeceğiz           |
|      |                        | I am not going to go.                |                        |
| 2nd  | gitmiyeceksin          |                                      | gitmiyeceksiniz        |
| 3rd  | gitmiyecek(tir)        |                                      | gitmiyecekler(dır)     |
| ıst  | bulmıyacağım           | I shall not find (it).               | bulmıyacağız           |
| 2nd  | bulmıyacaksın          |                                      | bulmıyacaksınız        |
| 3rd  | bulmıyacak(tır)        |                                      | bulmıyacaklar(dır)     |
| ıst  | anlamıyacağım          | I shall not understand               | anlamıyacağız          |
|      |                        | (it).                                |                        |
| 2nd  | anlamıyacaksın         |                                      | anlamıyacaksımz        |
| 3rd  | anlamıyacak(tır)       |                                      | anlamıyacaklar(dır)    |
| Th   | e future negative int  | errogative verb forms are            |                        |
|      | SINGULAR               |                                      | PLURAL                 |
| ıst  | gitmiyecek miyim?      | Am I not going to                    | gitmiyecek miyiz?      |
|      |                        | go?                                  |                        |
| 2nd  | gitmiyecek misin?      |                                      | gitmiyecek misiniz?    |
| 3rd  | gitmiyecek mi(dir)?    |                                      | gitmiyecekler mi(dir)? |
| ıst  | bulmıyacak mıyım?      | Am I not going to                    | bulmıyacak mıyız?      |
|      |                        | find (it)?                           |                        |
| 2nd  | bulmıyacak mısın?      |                                      | bulmıyacak mısınız?    |
| 3rd  | bulmıyacak mı(dır)?    |                                      | bulmıyacaklar mı(dır)? |
| Ist  | anlamıyacak mıyım      | ? Am I not going to understand (it)? | anlamiyacak miyiz?     |
|      |                        |                                      |                        |

## 3. Adverbs

3rd

and anlamiyacak misin?

anlamıyacak mı(dır)?

The same word may serve as adjective and adverb.

iyi bir kız a good girl

iyi anlamak to understand well

anlamıyacak mısınız?

anlamıyacaklar mı(dır)?

## 4. Comparison

The simple expression of comparison requires only the ablative suffix.

benden büyük bigger than I
sizden iyi better than you
ondan az less than that

The fuller expression of comparison adds the adverbs daha 'more' or az 'less.' The superlative uses the adverbs en 'most' or en az 'least.'

benden daha büyük bigger than I
sizden daha iyi better than you
en büyük the biggest
en az the least
sizden az çalışkan less industrious than you
en az çalışkan the least industrious

## 5. Emphatics

Many adjectives have special emphatic forms. Such forms are shown in dictionaries as separate words.

| ADJECTIVE |       | E                     | EMPHATIC FORM            |  |
|-----------|-------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| beyaz     | white | bembeyaz              | white as can be, as snow |  |
| açık      | open  | apaçık                | wide open                |  |
| uzun      | long  | upuzun extremely long |                          |  |
| çıplak    | naked | çırçıplak stark naked |                          |  |
| siyah     | black | simsiyah              | jet black                |  |

Apart from these emphatics, the ordinary means for securing emphasis is simply to say a word twice.

yavaş slowly yavaş yavaş very slowly Güldü güldü. He laughed and laughed.

## 6. The suffix -c/c V<sup>2</sup>

Among the uses of this suffix are

a. to mean 'as for.'

bence as for me, as I see it fikrimce as for my idea, in my view, etc.

b. to mean 'ish' (frequently pejorative), '-ly.'

cocukça like a child, childishly, kiddish, kiddishly stupidly stupidly in the Turkish way, i.e., the Turkish language (and so with all languages, Arapça, Fransızca, Rusca, İngilizce, etc.)

Note: bu 'this' forms bunca 'thus,' 'in this way,' 'this much.'

c. yüzlerce hundreds and hundreds, hundred after hundred yıllarca years and years, year after year

### Exercises

### A Practice aloud Translate

- I. Evim evinizden daha büyük(tür).
- Saidin Amerikadan gelmesi iyi mi olacak?
   Sait henüz Amerikadan gelmedi. O Haziran ayında gelecektir.
- 3. O yıl, ayda bir Ankaraya giderdik.
- 4. Tuzu bana verir misiniz, lûtfen?
- 5. Ne dersiniz, efendim; oraya gidecek miyiz, gitmiyecek miyiz?
- 6. Size geldiler mi?

Evet efendim, iki defa geldiler.

İki defa mı? O halde, bize de gelecekler.

Her halde gelecekler.

- Ahmet Beylere gitmediniz mi?
   Gitmedim. Zaten, ben oraya hiç gitmem.
- 8. Gazeteyi açar açmaz bunu gördüm.
- 9. İki çocuk koşmaya başladılar.
- 10. Kızın saçları simsiyah.
- II. Çok kitap okumak iyi.
- 12. Küçük kızın okuması iyi.
- 13. Bu yazıları kim yazdı? Ben yazdım.

Cocuğum, bövle vazma! Daha iyi vazmak lâzım!

- 14. En güzel elmalar kimin (elmaları)?
- 15. Bunlar sizin mi?
- 16. Babam saat 7:00de kalkar, kahvaltı yapar, gazeteyi okur, saat 8:30da otomobile biner, bürosuna gider.
- 17. Okumak istemez mi? Hic istemez.
- 18. Siz bugün gitmiyecek misiniz?
- 19. Hayır, fakat yarın gideceğim.
- 20. Bunları kime vereceksiniz?
- 21. Ahmet, parayı bana vermeden İtalyaya gitmiyecek.
- 22. Fikrinizce, Ahmet paramı alır mı?
- 23. Ahmet annenizin evine yarın gitsin mi, gitmesin mi?
- 24. Dün gelmediler fakat yarın gelecekler.
- 25. Parayı bize verecek misiniz, vermiyecek misiniz?
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. Why aren't you going to go to Beyoğlu?

- 2. From whom did Selma's father buy his car?
- 3. In which garage will he put it?
- 4. Which movie are they going to go to?
- 5. Mehmet never goes to the movies.
- 6. We used to go to the movies twice a week.
- 7. As I see it, your son's not having read this book is (a) bad (thing).
- 8. They searched for days and days but they did not find the dog.
- 9. For whom did you wait?
- 10. I shall expect you at my house tomorrow.
- 11. As soon as I got to Ankara, I phoned Mehmet Bey.
- 12. He will not go to Ankara without (first) giving you the books.
- 13. My dog is bigger than Selma's dog.
- 14. His dog is completely white but my dog is jet black.
- 15. Go slow!
- 16. I didn't entirely understand.
- 17. The smallest girl ate the biggest apple.
- 18. Is Ahmet going to come, or not?
- 19. In Ahmet's opinion, should Selma come, or not?
- 20. Why don't you work harder?

# Lesson 13

## Postpositions. Expressions of Location

- Ahmet ile Mehmet beraber geldiler.
- 2. Ahmet ile Mehmet geldiler.
- 3. Ahmetle Mehmet geldiler.
- 4. Kalemim ile yazma!
- 5. Kalemimle yazma!
- 6. Bunun ile yazın!
- 7. Bununla yaz!
- 8. Saat ondan evvel gelmiyecekler.
- 9. Otomobil bana doğru geldi.
- Babası gibi, çocuk okumayı hiç sevmez.
- II. Sizin gibi bir adam hiç gördüler mi?
- Kitap büyük kutunun altında (dır).
- 13. Kitabi kutunun altından alınız.
- 14. Kitabi kutunun arkasında buldunuz mu?
- 15. Kitabı kutunun altına koyacaklar mı?
- 16. Kitaplarınızı kutunun içinde gördük.

Ahmet and Mehmet came together.

Ahmet and (with) Mehmet came.

Ahmet and (with) Mehmet came.

Don't write with my pencil!

Don't write with my pencil!

Write with this (one)!

Write with this!

They won't come before ten o'clock.

The car came straight at me.

(Just) like his father, the child doesn't like studying at all.

Have they ever seen a man like you?

The book is under the big box.

Take the book from under the box.

Did you find the book behind the box?

Will they put the book under the box?

We saw your books inside the box.

### 1. Postpositions

Turkish postpositions—some of them suffixes, some of them independent words—follow substantives and govern them much as English prepositions govern the substantives which they precede.

Classified according to the suffixes which they require on the preceding substantives, Turkish postpositions are:

CLASS I: postpositions which require that the preceding substantive have the ablative suffix;

CLASS II: postpositions which require that the preceding substantive have the dative suffix; and

CLASS III: postpositions that require a preceding personal or interrogative pronoun or singular demonstrative pronoun to have the possessive suffix but that require no suffix on other preceding substantives.

The important postpositions include

CLASS I (ablative suffix on preceding substantive)

başka-other than, apart from, except for

benden başka except for me

kitaplarımdan başka apart from my books

Başka may also be an adjective.

başka bir kitap another book

Contrast: diğer kitap (the) other book

evvel-before (in time)

bizden evvel before us, earlier than we ondan evvel before ten (before him, etc.)

saat ondan evvel before ten o'clock

sonra-after

onlardan sonra after them
saat altıdan sonra after six o'clock
altı saatten sonra after six hours

beri-subsequent to, since

on saatten beri for (the) past ten hours saat ondan beri since ten o'clock bin sekiz yüz altmış since 1863

ücten beri

dolayi-because of

sizden dolayı because of you because of his money

CLASS II (dative suffix on preceding substantive)

kadar-up to, until, as far as

saat ona kadar until ten o'clock evime kadar as far as my house

Kadar may also be a noun meaning 'amount.'

bu kadar this much ne kadar? how much?

doğru-straight toward

bana doğru right at me

evine doğru straight toward his house

Doğru may also be a modifier meaning 'right,' 'true,' 'straight.'

doğru sözler true words

karşı-against, opposite, anti-

bana karşı against me

çocuklara karşı against (the) children

göre—according to

onlara göre according to them

gazeteye göre according to the newspaper

rağmen—despite

ona rağmen despite that

parasına rağmen in spite of his money

nazaran—compared with, in regard to

İzmire nazaran Ankara daha Compared with Izmir, büyük(tür). Ankara is larger.

CLASS III (no suffix on any preceding substantive except a personal pronoun, a singular interrogative pronoun, and a singular demonstrative pronoun—these require the possessive suffix)

ile—'with,' independent word, also used in the suffixed form -1 V<sup>2</sup>. After a final vowel, suffixed -1 V<sup>2</sup> may become -y 1 V<sup>2</sup>. Both ile and -(y) 1 V<sup>2</sup> frequently are followed by beraber, 'together': ile beraber or -(y) 1 V<sup>2</sup> beraber, 'together with.'

benim ile, benimle with me

cocuk ile, cocukla with (the) child

bunun ile beraber, bununla beraber together with this, moreover

kitabi ile, kitabiyla with his book annesi ile, annesiyle with his mother

Note: *Île* is frequently used to mean 'and': *Ahmet ile Mehmet*, 'Ahmet and Mehmet.'

gibi-like, similar to

sizin gibi like you
bunun gibi like this

babası gibi like his father

için—for, for the purpose of, because of

benim için for me, because of me bunun için for this, because of this

çocuklar içinfor (the) childrenanlamak içinfor understanding

Note: niçin (from ne için) for what? why?

üzere (or) üzre—upon

bunun üzerine upon this, thereupon

gitmek üzere on the point of going, in order to go,

on condition of going

## 2. Expressions of location

Much of the work of English prepositions is done in Turkish by nouns of place used in possessive constructions.

üst-top, upper part

kutunun üstünetoward the top of the boxkutunun üstündeon (the) top of the boxkutunun üstündenfrom the top of the boxKitabım kutununMy book (is) on top of

üstünde(dır). the box.

Kitabımı kutunun üstüne They put my book on top

koydular. of the box.

*Ust* may also be an adjective.

üst kat top floor, top story

alt—bottom, lower part

Para o kitabın The money (is) under that altında(dır). book.

Paranizi o kitabin altina He put your money under koydu. He put your money under

Parayı o kitabın altından Didn't you take the money

from under that book?

Alt may also be an adjective.

almadınız mı?

alt taraf bottom side

yan—side, (the) space or place next Yanınızda iki çocuk gördüm. Yanıma gel!

O köpek, sahibinin yanından hiç ayrılmaz.

Yan may also be an adjective.

yan kapı

ara-midst, space between

Aramızda, böyle bir şey hiç olmaz.

Kalemimi iki kitabın arasına koydum. At. iki otomobilin

arasından geçti.

Note this pattern:

Ankara ile İstanbul arasında kız ile babesinin arasında

Ara may also be an adjective.

ara kapı

iç—(the) inside

Kutunun içinde ne buldunuz?

Kitaplarımı büyük kutunun içine koydular.

Iç may also be an adjective.

iç kapı

dış—(the) outside

Evi şehrin dışında(dır).

Dis may also be an adjective.

dış kapı

üzere or üzre-the place or space over

Evinizin üzerinde büyük bir kuş gördüm.

Evin üzerinden iki uçak geçti.

arka—back part, space in back
Evinizin arkasında kimi
gördüm?

imi

I saw two children beside you. Come here to me!

That dog never goes away from his master's side.

side door

Between us, nothing of the sort will happen at all.

I put my pencil between the two books.

The horse went (passed) between the two cars.

between Ankara and Istanbul between the girl and her father

middle door

What did you find in (inside) the box?

They put my books interest.

They put my books into the big box.

inside door

His house (is) outside the city.

outside door

I saw a big bird over your house.

Two planes passed over the house.

Whom did I see behind your house?

Kutunun arkasına bir kitap koydu.

Çocuklar arkamdan geçtiler.

Arka may also be an adjective.

arka kapı

ön—front part, space in front Evinizin önünde ne oldu?

Kitapları kutunun önüne koyma! Önümüzden iki otomobil

geçti.

Ön may also be an adjective.

ön kapı

He put a book behind the box.

The children passed behind me.

back door

What happened in front of your house?

Don't put the books in front of the box!

Two cars passed (crossed) in front of us.

front door

### Also note:

yukarı up, space that is higher, upstairs

aşağı opposite of yukarı

dişarı outside, space that is out

içeri opposite of dışarı

## **Exercises**

### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- I. Arkamızdan kim geçti?
- 2. Önümüzden geçmiyecekler mi?
- 3. Sizden sonra kim geldi?
- 4. Sizden dolayı, kardeşiniz de geç geldi.
- 5. Niçin bana bunun gibi bir elma vermedin?
- 6. Kutunun içinde ne buldunuz?
- 7. Gazeteyi cebinden aldı.
- 8. Evi dağın üstünde(dir).
- 9. Köpek sahibinin sesini bilir.
- 10. Benim için çay getirdiler.
- 11. Niçin saat sekizden evvel geldiler?
- 12. Çocuk babasının kalemiyle yazdı.
- 13. Niçin çalıştın?
- 14. Anlamak için, öğrenmek için çalıştık.
- 15. Bunun gibi bir kitap hiç okumadım.

### B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- I. What did Ahmet put in his pocket?
- 2. Where did Selma find the teacups?
- 3. She found one cup in the box (and) the others behind it.
- 4. Who took my book?
- 5. Ahmet did.
- 6. Where did he put it?
- 7. He put it beside the tree.
- 8. Where's Nilüfer?
- 9. She's gone to the movies.
- 10. Did she go alone?
- 11. She did not.
- 12. With whom did she go?
- 13. She went with Ahmet's sister.
- 14. Will they be late?
- 15. No. They'll come here before 9:30.

# Lesson 14

The Verb 'to Be.' Var and Yok.

The Resumptive Question

- I. Ahmet gençtir, değil mi?
- 2. Onlar genç idiler.
- 3. Onlar gençtiler, değil mi?
- 4. Siz Türk müsünüz, efendim?
- 5. Evet, efendim, Türküm.
- 6. Annesi Fransız değil miydi?
- 7. Annesinin kaç evi vardır?
- 8. Bundan bir kaç sene evvel annesinin üç evi vardı, fakat bugün hiç bir evi yoktur.
- 9. Babasının parası yok muydu?
- 10. Vardı.
- 11. Kitabım burada değil(dir).
- 12. Selmanın kitabı yok(tur).

Ahmet is young, isn't he?

They were young.

They were young, weren't they?

Are you a Turk, sir?

Yes, sir, I am Turkish.

Wasn't his mother French?

How many houses does his mother have?

A few years ago his mother owned three houses but today she has none at all.

Didn't her father have money?

He did.

My book is not here.

Selma doesn't have a book.

### I. The verb 'to be'

The Turkish verb 'to be' is defective. It lacks the infinitive and several tenses. These missing forms may be replaced by corresponding forms of olmak 'to become.'

Some forms of 'to be' are suffixes. This is true of the present forms.

|            | SINGULAR  | PLURAL                |
|------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1st person | -(y) V4 m | -(y) V <sup>4</sup> z |
| 2nd person | -s V4 n   | -s V4 n V4 z          |
| 3rd person | -t/d V4 r | -t/d V4 r 1 V2 r      |

Note: The third singular and plural are frequently omitted. (See Lesson 3, section 3.)

The indefinite article (bir) is not used

a. with negative of 'to be'

Cocuk değilim.

I'm not a child.

b. with expressions of occupation, nationality, etc.

Amerikalıyım.

I am an American.

The generic is frequently used where English expects a plural.

Talebeyiz.

We are students.

#### PRESENT POSITIVE

|     | 4  |    |
|-----|----|----|
| sin | gu | аг |

|     | ıst | Gençim.  | I am young. | Talebeyim. | I am a student. |
|-----|-----|----------|-------------|------------|-----------------|
|     | 2nd | Gençsin. |             | Talebesin. |                 |
|     | 3rd | Gençtir. |             | Talebedir. |                 |
| 111 | -21 |          |             |            |                 |

### plural

| Ist | Gençiz.     | Talebeyiz.    |
|-----|-------------|---------------|
| 2nd | Gençsiniz.  | Talebesiniz.  |
| 3rd | Gençtirler. | Talebedirler. |

#### PRESENT INTERROGATIVE

| SHIR | ulai |                |                  |
|------|------|----------------|------------------|
|      | rst  | Genç miyim?    | Talebe miyim?    |
|      | 2nd  | Genç misin?    | Talebe misin?    |
|      | 3rd  | Genç midir?    | Talebe midir?    |
| plur | al   |                |                  |
|      | Ist  | Genç miyiz?    | Talebe miyiz?    |
|      | 2nd  | Genç misiniz?  | Talebe misiniz?  |
|      | 3rd  | Genc midirler? | Talebe midirler? |

In the past, the verb 'to be' has two sets of forms: those that are suffixes and those that are independent words. Their meanings are identical.

| ENCLITIC FORM |                       | INDEPEND | DENT FORM       |
|---------------|-----------------------|----------|-----------------|
| singular      |                       |          |                 |
| Ist           | -t/d V <sup>4</sup> m | idim     | I was           |
| 2nd           | -t/d V4 n             | idin     | you were        |
| 3rd           | -t/d V <sup>4</sup>   | idi      | he, she, it was |
| plural        |                       |          |                 |
| Ist           | -t/d V4 k             | idik     | we were         |
| 2nd           | -t/d V4 n V4 z        | idiniz   | you were        |
| 3rd           | -t/d V4 1 V2 r        | idiler   | they were       |

#### PAST POSITIVE

| 2111 | guiai |            |              |
|------|-------|------------|--------------|
|      | Ist   | Gençtim.   | Genç idim.   |
|      | 2nd   | Gençtin.   | Genç idin.   |
|      | 3rd   | Gençti.    | Genç idi.    |
| plu  | ral   |            |              |
|      | Ist   | Gençtik.   | Genç idik.   |
|      | 2nd   | Gençtiniz. | Genç idiniz. |
|      | 3rd   | Gençtiler. | Genç idiler. |

In the case of a substantive ending in a vowel (e.g., talebe 'student'), a y is inserted between the final vowel and the past suffixes.

| singular |               |                |
|----------|---------------|----------------|
| ıst      | Talebeydim.   | Talebe idim.   |
| 2nd      | Talebeydin.   | Talebe idin.   |
| 3rd      | Talebeydi.    | Talebe idi.    |
| plural   |               |                |
| ıst      | Talebeydik.   | Talebe idik.   |
| 2nd      | Talebeydiniz. | Talebe idiniz. |
| 3rd      | Talebeydiler. | Talebe idiler. |

A y is also inserted between the interrogative syllable and the past suffixed forms.

### Genç miydiler?

DAST NEGATIVE

With 'to be,' the negative is always değil 'not.'

| PKI      | ESENT NEGATIVE | FASI NEGATIVE  |    |             |
|----------|----------------|----------------|----|-------------|
| singular |                |                |    |             |
| ıst      | Genç değilim.  | Genç değildim. | or | değil idim. |
| 2nd      | Genç değilsin. | Genç değildin. |    | değil idin. |
| 3rd      | Genç değildir. | Genç değildi.  |    | değil idi.  |

| ıst | Genç değiliz.     | Genç değildik.   | or | değil idik.   |
|-----|-------------------|------------------|----|---------------|
| 2nd | Genç değilsiniz.  | Genç değildiniz. |    | değil idiniz. |
| 3rd | Genç değildirler. | Genç değildiler. |    | değil idiler. |

PRESENT NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE

2nd Genc değil misiniz?

Genc değil midirler?

PAST NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE

değil mi idiniz?

değil mi idiler?

### singular

| _      |                     |                    |    |                |
|--------|---------------------|--------------------|----|----------------|
| ıst    | Genç değil miyim?   | Genç değil miydim? | or | değil mi idim? |
| 2nd    | d Genç değil misin? | Genç değil miydin? |    | değil mi idin? |
| 3rd    | l Genç değil midir? | Genç değil miydi?  |    | değil mi idi?  |
| plural |                     |                    |    |                |
| rst    | Genc değil miyiz?   | Genc değil miydik? | ог | değil mi idik? |

Genç değil miydiniz?

Genç değil miydiler?

## 2. Var and yok

3rd

The two words *var* 'extant,' 'in existence' and *yok* 'non-extant,' 'not in existence' are of remarkable frequence and importance in Turkish.

Their principal functions are to express: possession, the verb 'to have' and the English 'there is' and 'there are.'

Var and yok are always used with some form of the verb 'to be'—understood if not expressed. In the third present, singular and plural, the verb form is usually not expressed.

Bir çocuğum var(dır). I have a child. Have you a child? Cocuğun var mı(dır)? Ahmedin iki çocuğu var(dır). Ahmet has two children. We have two children. İki çocuğumuz var(dır). Cocuğunuz var mı(dır)? Do you have children? Onların bir çocukları var(dır). They have one child. I have no children. Çocuğum yok(tur). Cocuğu yok mu(dur)? Doesn't he have a child? Bir çocuğum vardı (var idi). I had a child. Didn't Ahmet have a child? Ahmedin bir çocuğu yok muydu? What is there in the house? Evde ne var(dır)? Evde beş kutu var(dır). There are five boxes in the house. Evde ne vardı? What was there in the house? Evde bes kutu vardı. There were five boxes in the house. Sizde para var mı(dır)? Do you have any money ('on you')?

Sizde para yok mu(dur)? Don't you have any money with you?

Ahmette hiç para yoktu (yok idi). Ahmet didn't have any money with him.

Mehmette çok para vardı (var idi).

Mehmet had a lot of money with

Mehmedin çok parası vardı (var Mehmet was very rich (had a lot idi). of money).

## 3. The resumptive question

In English one repeats a verb in the interrogative in order to gather up the conversation and proceed. In Turkish, the same effect is produced, for any verb, simply by adding *değil mi?* (compare French 'n'est-ce pas?').

Gitti, değil mi? He went, didn't he?
Gelmiyecekler, değil mi? They won't come, will they?

### Exercises

### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- 1. Otomobiliniz nerede, Ahmet Bey?
- 2. Otomobilim yok, efendim. Vardı fakat onu sattım.
- 3. Otomobiliniz iyi miydi, Ahmet Bey?
- 4. İyi değildi. Çok eskiydi. Onun için sattım.
- 5. Küçük Selma nerede, Mihri Hanım?
- 6. Burada değildir. Selmayı bugün görmedim.
- 7. Fakat bugün buraya gelecek, değil mi?
- 8. Evet, Mihri Hanım, insallah gelecek.
- q. Dün öğleden sonra evinizde kim vardı?
- 10. Mehmet vardı. Ahmet vardı. Bir kaç arkadaş geldiler. Oturduk, konuştuk. O kadar...
- II. İki kızkardeşiniz var, değil mi?
- 12. Hayır, yalnız bir kızkardeşim var, fakat kocamın iki kızkardeşi var.
- 13. Türkiyede elma var mı?
- 14. Evet, hem de çok elma var.
- 15. Bahçenizde iki elma ağacı var, değil mi?
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - I. Whose book is this?
  - 2. Who doesn't have a book?

- 3. These are yours, aren't they?
- 4. These aren't yours, are they?
- 5. She had four sisters, didn't she?
- 6. Your book is at my house.
- 7. There are no books in their house.
- 8. Ahmet's father has two automobiles.
- 9. Your father didn't have an automobile, did he?
- 10. Is Ahmet there?

# Lesson 15

The Suffixes -1 V<sup>4</sup>, -s V<sup>4</sup> z, and -1 V<sup>4</sup> k.

Past Indefinite, Past Narrative,
and Past Perfect Verb Forms

- Yaşlı kadın ölmüş.
- 2. Yaşlı kadın ölmüştür.
- 3. Yaşlı kadın ölmüştü. (Yaslı kadın ölmüs idi.)
- 4. Bugün hava yağmurludur.
- Siz Ankaralı mısınız?Evet, Ankaralıyım.
- 6. Ahmet gitmiş mi?

Her halde gitmiş.

- 7. Ha! Ben onunla beraber gitmişim! Öyle mi?
- 8. Bir varmış, bir yokmuş. Allahın kulu çokmuş...
- 9. Radyonuz kaç lambalı?
- 10. Eski ev elektrikli mi, elektriksiz mi?

The aged woman (reportedly) has died (died, is dead).

The aged woman died. (narrative) The aged woman had died.

Today the weather is rainy.

Are you from Ankara?

Yes, I am from Ankara.

Has Ahmet gone (so far as you know)?

Certainly he seems to have gone.

So! I'm supposed to have gone with him! (I allegedly went with him!) Is that how it is?

Once upon a time...(Once there was, once there wasn't, they say: but God's slaves are many...)

How many tubes does your radio have?

Does the old house have electricity or not?

### I. The suffix -1 V4

The suffix -1 V<sup>4</sup> (whose meaning is the opposite of -s V<sup>4</sup> z, see section 2, below) forms adjectives meaning 'having,' 'possessed of.'

| para     | money            | paralı     | rich                               |
|----------|------------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| ev       | house            | evli       | married (has a home)               |
| elektrik | electricity      | elektrikli | electrified, wired for electricity |
| yaş      | age (of a human) | yaşlı      | aged                               |

### 2. The suffix -s V4 z

This suffix, the opposite of the suffix -1 V<sup>4</sup>, forms adjectives meaning 'without,' 'deprived of,' '-less.'

| parasız | moneyless          | tuzsuz   | salt free     |
|---------|--------------------|----------|---------------|
| susuz   | waterless, thirsty | şekersiz | without sugar |

## 3. The suffix -1 V4 k

This suffix forms nouns, usually abstract.

| evli     | married   | evlilik     | matrimony                                |
|----------|-----------|-------------|--|
| öğretmen | teacher   | öğretmenlik | profession of being a teacher            |
| büyük    | large     | büyüklük    | largeness, size;<br>adulthood; greatness |
| göz      | eye       | gözlük      | eyepiece, glasses                        |
| parasız  | moneyless | parasızlık  | poverty                                  |
| susuz    | arid      | susuzluk    | waterlessness, thirst                    |

### Note also:

| satılık ev           | house for sale           |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| kiralık ev           | house for rent           |
| şimdilik             | for the present, for now |
| beş kişilik otomobil | five-passenger car       |
| günlük gazete        | daily newspaper          |

## 4. Past indefinite verb forms

Turkish seldom expresses past time without simultaneously specifying one aspect of what happened, which English usually ignores. This aspect is the definiteness of the speaker's (or writer's) knowledge of what happened.

The word gitti (past definite) means 'He (definitely) went.' The corresponding past indefinite form means 'He (apparently, allegedly, reportedly, presumably, or ostensibly) went (but I am not sure enough of this assertion to be able honestly to say gitti).'

The past indefinite verb forms use these suffixes

|          |         | SINGULA                         | ıR                 | PLURAL                               |                    |
|----------|---------|---------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
|          | ıst -r  | n V <sup>4</sup> ş <sup>3</sup> | V <sup>4</sup> m   | -m V <sup>4</sup> ş V <sup>4</sup> z |                    |
|          | 2nd -r  | n V <sup>4</sup> ş s            | s V <sup>4</sup> n | -m V <sup>4</sup> ş s V <sup>4</sup> | n V <sup>4</sup> z |
|          | 3rd -r  | n V <sup>4</sup> ş              |                    | -m V <sup>4</sup> ş 1 V <sup>2</sup> | r                  |
|          | POSITI  | VE                              |                    |                                      | NEGATIVE           |
| singular |         |                                 |                    |                                      |                    |
| ıst      | Gitmiş  | im.                             |                    | lly) went,<br>, have gone.           | Gitmemişim.        |
| 2nd      | Gitmiş  | sin.                            |                    | ortedly) went,<br>, have gone.       | Gitmemişsin.       |
| 3rd      | Gitmiş  | •                               |                    |                                      | Gitmemiş.          |
| plural   |         |                                 |                    |                                      |                    |
| ıst      | Gitmiş  | iz.                             |                    |                                      | Gitmemişiz.        |
| 2nd      | Gitmiş  | siniz.                          |                    |                                      | Gitmemişsiniz.     |
| 3rd      | Gitmiş  | ler.                            |                    |                                      | Gitmemişler.       |
|          |         | INTERI                          | ROGATIVE           | NEGATIVE IN                          | TERROGATIVE        |
| Si       | ingular |                                 |                    |                                      |                    |
|          | Ist     | Gitmi                           | ş miyim?           | Gitmemiş                             | miyim?             |
|          | 2nd     | Gitmi                           | ş misin?           | Gitmemiş                             | misin?             |
|          | 3rd     | Gitmi                           | ş mi?              | Gitmemiş                             | mi?                |
| p        | lural   |                                 |                    |                                      |                    |
|          | Ist     | Gitmi                           | ş miyiz?           | Gitmemiş                             | miyiz?             |
|          | 2nd     | Gitmi                           | ş misiniz?         | Gitmemiş                             | misiniz?           |
|          | 3rd     | Gitmi                           | şler mi?           | Gitmemiş                             | ler mi?            |

### 5. Past narrative verb forms

The preceding verb forms—past indefinite—with the addition of only a final -t/d V<sup>4</sup> r to the third singular and plural, provide a past narrative tense much used by newspapers and storytellers.

The past narrative verb forms (third person) are

|          | POSITIVE   |          | NEGATIVE     |                |
|----------|------------|----------|--------------|----------------|
| singular |            |          |              |                |
| 3rd      | Gitmiştir. | He went. | Gitmemiştir. | He did not go. |

plural

3rd Gitmişlerdir.

Gitmemişlerdir.

singular

3rd Gitmiş midir?

Gitmemiş midir?

plural

3rd Gitmiş midirler?

Gitmemiş midirler?

## 6. Past perfect verb forms

Combining the verb form ending in -m V<sup>4</sup> \$ (the past participle; see Lesson 16, section 2) with the past of the verb 'to be' produces a verb form whose tense value is well back in the past. According to context it may be understood as past ('I went') or, frequently, as past perfect ('I had gone').

The past perfect verb forms are

POSITIVE

NEGATIVE

singular

1st Gitmiştim. I had gone.

Gitmemiştim. Gitmemiştin.

2nd Gitmiştin. 3rd Gitmişti.

Gitmemişti.

plural

1st Gitmiştik.2nd Gitmiştiniz.

Gitmemiştik. Gitmemiştiniz. Gitmemislerdi.

3rd Gitmişlerdi.

INTERROGATIVE

Gitmis mivdim? etc.

NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE Gitmemis miydim? etc.

In addition, the independent forms of the past verb 'to be' may be used.

POSITIVE

NEGATIVE

Bulmuş idim. I had found. etc.

Bulmamış idim.

I had not found.

I had not gone.

etc.

Negative forms may use the word değil.

Gitmiş değildim. (or Gitmemiştim.)

I had not gone.

etc.

## Exercises

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
  - I. Kardeşinizin yatak odası yukarıda mı, aşağıda mı?
  - 2. Kızkardeşimizi gördünüz mü?
  - 3. Parayı kutunun altından kim aldı?

- 4. Ahmet dün sabah buraya gelmiş, bunu demiş, şunu demiş, sonra kızkardeşimin parasını almış ve gitmiştir. (The final -tir serves for all verbs. See above section 5.)
- 5. Ahmede göre, onlar buraya gelmezler.
- 6. Tramvayın ön tarafında iki yer bulduk.
- 7. Çocuğum, bugün içeriye girme!
- 8. 1937 senesinden evvel İstanbula gitmemiş miydi?
- 9. Su, ağzına kadar çıktı.
- 10. Sana göre, kızkardeşim Ahmedin otomobiline binmedi.
- 11. Ondan başka, ne istediler?
- 12. Niçin gelmiyecekler?
- 13. Buraya pek gelmek istemiyecekler.
- 14. Cay fincanlarının içlerine ne koydu?
- 15. Tren, istasyonda beş dakika kaldı.
- 16. Siz çoktan beri Türkiyeye gitmediniz.
- 17. Eviniz bahçeli mi(dir)?
- 18. Bundan beş gün evvel çocuklar seyahate çıktılar.
- 19. Bu ev satılık mı(dır), kiralık mı(dır)?
- 20. İstanbulun günlük gazeteleri çok.
- 21. Fakirliğime rağmen, ben o adamdan para almam!
- 22. Ahmet ve Erdoğan İstanbula gitmek için çok çalışmışlar.
- 23. Büyük kutu yanınızda kalsın mı? Evet, bir iki hafta kadar kalsın.
- 24. Trenin önûnden geçme!
- 25. Çocuklar, dış kapıyı açmayınız, lütfen!
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - I. Mehmet, has Ahmet gone to Istanbul?
    I didn't see him. But he certainly seems to have gone.
    Erdoğan, did you see Ahmet?
    I did, sir. He didn't go to Istanbul; he went to Edirne.
  - 2. Do you want your coffee with or without sugar?
  - 3. I like tea with lemon.
  - 4. This café au lait is very good.
  - 5. Had Ahmet's brother died before 1955?
  - 6. In 1949 I had two houses. Now I have three. (There are three of them.)
  - 7. At that time you weren't married, were you?
  - 8. My father always desired goodness, rightness, and beauty.
  - 9. According to Ahmet, he hasn't gone.
- 10. According to Ahmet, he hadn't gone.

# Lesson 16

The Partitive. Participles. Gerund in -t/d V<sup>4</sup> k. Indirect Discourse. Relative Gerundive and Adverb

- I. Kitaplarınızdan hangisini aldılar?
- 2. Kitaplarınızdan hangilerini istedi?
- 3. Birisi gitti mi?
- 4. Birçoğunu anlamadım.
- 5. Geçen sene buraya gelmediler, değil mi?
- 6. Gelecek sene ne olacak?
- 7. Evimize gelmediği için parayı ona vermedik.
- 8. Ahmedin dün gelmediğini söylediniz.
- Ahmedin dün geleceğini söylediniz.
- 10. Ahmedin bugün geleceğini dün söylediniz.
- 11. Ahmedin yarın geleceğini size söyliyecekler.
- 12. Gördüğümüz adamın evi yok mudur?
- Söylediklerinden yarısını anlamadım.

- Which (one) of your books did they take?
- Which (ones) of your books did he want?
- Did somebody go?
- I didn't understand a good deal of it.
- Last year they didn't come here, did they?
- What will happen next year?
- Because he didn't come to our house, we didn't give him the money.
- You said that Ahmet didn't (hadn't) come yesterday.
- You said that Ahmet would (was going to) come yesterday.
- Yesterday you said that Ahmet would (will) come today.
- They'll tell you that Ahmet is coming (will come) tomorrow.
- Doesn't the man whom we saw have a house?
- I didn't understand half of the things that they said.

- 14. Babası Ankaraya gidecek olan çocuk hasta oldu.
- 15. Ankaraya gidecek olanlar istasyona saat 7den evvel gelsinler.

The child whose father is going (will go) to Ankara took (became) sick.

People who are going to Ankara should come to the station before 7:00.

## 1. The partitive

The English partitive construction, e.g., 'one of a number,' 'part of a whole' has as its usual Turkish counterpart this pattern.

onlardan biri

one of them (from them)

The ablative expresses the idea 'from the whole'; the incomplete possessive construction (no expressed first member) expresses the part.

aralarından biri

one of them (from their midst)

In this usage, a word may bear what appear to be two possessive suffixes.

aralarından birisi

one of them

The word birisi also means 'someone,' 'somebody.'

Birisi gitmiş. Birisi gitti. (Apparently) somebody went. Somebody (definitely) went.

Similar forms include

| bazı   | some        | bazısı           | some of it, of them   |
|--------|-------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| kim?   | who?        | Kimi geldi, kimi | Some of them came and |
|        |             | gelmedi.         | some didn't.          |
| başka  | other       | bir başkası      | another of them,      |
|        |             |                  | some other one        |
| hep    | all         | hepsi            | all of it, of them    |
|        |             | hepiniz          | all of you            |
| her    | each, every | her biri         | each one (of them)    |
| birçok | a lot       | birçoğu          | a lot of it (of them) |
|        | Compare     | birçokları       | a lot of them         |

### 2. Participles

The third person singular, positive and negative of the (a) general verb forms, (b) past indefinite verb forms, and (c) future verb forms may be used as verbal adjectives (participles).

akar su

okumuş (olan) bir adam

(olan—present participle of olmak—may be used or omitted as one chooses.)

gelecek sene (or) gelecek olan sene

water which flows; running water man who has read; educated man

next year, coming year, year that

will come

geçmiş zaman

bitmez iş

time that has passed; past tense work that does not end; endless task

seni anlıyacak bir kız a girl who'll understand you

Any participle, when it modifies no expressed word, may become a substantive and, in that event, may take suffixes.

yazarın evi yazarların evleri the writer's house the writers' houses

Olacak oldu.

What was to happen happened.

The present participle is formed by the suffix -(y)  $V^2$  n added to the positive or negative verb stem.

Note: The buffer (y) alters an immediately preceding a to i, and an immediately preceding e to i.

| POSITIVE |                                    | NEGATIVE  |
|----------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| giden    | going, one who goes                | gitmiyen  |
| bilen    | knowing, one who knows             | bilmiyen  |
| anlıyan  | understanding, one who understands | anlamıyan |
| istiyen  | desiring, one who desires          | istemiyen |

A participle (verbal adjective) not only modifies words (its adjectival function) but also may exert verb force (can require other words to take suffixes).

oraya giden adamlar Ankaraya gidenler Ankaradan gelen iki kadın

(the) men who go there those who go to Ankara

(the) two women coming from Ankara

# 3. Gerund in -t/d V4 k

The gerund (verbal noun) in -t/d V<sup>4</sup> k is almost always second member of a possessive construction. The principal exception to this is when such a gerund is governed by the postposition *sonra* 'after.'

gittikten sonra

after going, after having gone.

The time value of this gerund varies. It may express present or past time. The third person singular future serves as the future gerund.

geldigimde

when I come, came, do come, did come, etc.

her gittiğimde gelmediğinizden dolayı

Ahmedin gelmiyeceğinden dolayı

at my every going, whenever I go, went, etc. because of your not coming, not having come, etc.

because Ahmet isn't going to come, won't

# 4. Indirect discourse

The gerund in -t/d  $V^4$  k (for past and present tenses) and the future gerund (for the future tense) are the usual ways of expressing indirect discourse. The usual verb indicating indirect discourse is  $s\ddot{o}ylemek$  ( $s\ddot{o}yler$ ). That of direct discourse is demek.

Study carefully the following examples.

I. Ahmet, 'Mehmet paramı aldı,'

2. Ahmet, Mehmedin parasını aldığını sövledi.

3. Ahmet, 'Mehmet hirsizdir,' dedi.

4. Ahmet, Mehmedin hırsız olduğunu söyledi.

5. Ahmet, 'Mehmet paramzı alacak, Selma,' dedi.

6. Ahmet, Selmaya Mehmedin parasını alacağını söyledi.

Ahmet said, 'Mehmet took my money.'

Ahmet said that Mehmet had taken his money.

Ahmet said, 'Mehmet's a thief.'

Ahmet said that Mehmet's a thief.

Ahmet said, 'Selma, Mehmet'll take your money.'

Ahmet told Selma that Mehmet will (would) take her money.

Note: In the above examples of indirect discourse, the subject of the dependent indirect construction becomes first member of a type I possessive construction, e.g., in sentences 2, 4, and in 6 the noun *Mehmedin*.

Note the type II possessive construction when the gerund is governed by a postposition.

Babam, Ahmet gelmediği için bana yazdı.

My father wrote me because Ahmet didn't come.

# 5. Relative gerundive and adverb

When the verb form in -t/d V<sup>4</sup> k modifies an expressed word, this form serves as verbal adjective (gerundive). This form seldom appears without some other suffix or suffixes added.

Used with possessive suffixes, this gerundive is called the relative gerundive.

Turkish has no single words equivalent to the English relative pronouns ('who,' 'which,' 'that') or the English relative adverbs ('when,' 'where').

The boy who came. The girl whose mother came. The house that I saw. The day when we went. The house where I found you.

For the Turkish interrogative pronouns and adverbs, to be distinguished from the relatives, see Lesson 7, section 2, Lesson 8, section 5.

The English nominative (absolute, subject of a verb) relative pronoun is expressed in Turkish in the participle. As an attributive adjective the participle precedes the noun.

gelen adam man who is coming, who comes gelecek adam man who will come akar su water that (which) flows

An English possessive or objective relative pronoun is expressed in Turkish in the relative gerundive with a possessive suffix.

#### OBJECTIVE RELATIVE PRONOUN

gördüğüm adam (the) man whom I saw

full form: benim onu gördüğüm adam

gördüğün adam (the) man whom you saw

full form: senin onu gördüğün adam

gördüğü adam etc.

gördüğümüz adam gördüğünüz adam gördükleri adam

Possessive relative pronoun

kitabını aldığım adam (the) man whose book

full form: benim onun kitabını aldığım I took

adam

kitabını aldığın adam (the) man whose book

full form: senin onun kitabını aldığın you took

adam

kitabını aldığı adam etc.

kitabını aldığımız adam kitabını aldığınız adam kitabını aldıkları adam

Note: In indirect discourse the interrogative pronoun (kim? 'who?') appears as follows:

1. Ahmet, 'Kim geldi?' dedi. Ahmet said, 'Who came?'

- 2. Ahmet kimin geldiğini sordu.
- 3. Ahmet bu kitabın kimin olduğunu sordu,
- Ahmet asked who had come (who came).
- Ahmet asked whose book this was.

#### RELATIVE ADVERBS

geldiğim gün (the) day (when, on which)

I came

geldiğin zaman (the) time (when, at which)

you came

gitmediği halde in (the) event that he didn't

go, although he didn't go, hasn't gone, hadn't

gone

geldiğim gibi as soon as I came

Second only to the possessive construction (see Lesson 10), the greatest difficulty with which Turkish confronts the English speaker is the expression of the possessive and objective relative pronouns and of the relative adjectives. Careful study of the patterns given above will do much to smooth the student's path.

## Exercises

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
  - I. Yeni gelenin ismi ne(dir)?
  - 2. Ahmedin dün geldiğini bana söylemediler.
  - 3. Sizin paranızı bulacağınızı ümit ettik.
  - 4. Evinizi kiraya verdiğiniz adamın ismi ne?
  - 5. Bunlardan hangisini istediler?
  - 6. Bunu iyi bilenler az(dır).
- 7. Beyoğluna gitmek istiyenler kaç kişi?
- 8. Kimin geldiğini görmediniz mi?
- 9. Öğretmen, çocuklarımızın derslerine çok çalıştıklarını bize söyledi.
- 10. Babam, Ahmet buraya gelmediğinden dolayı bana bir mektup yazdı.
- II. Gördüğünüz şehirlerden hangisi en güzel?
- 12. Dün gelmiş olan adamın otomobilini evimin önünde görmediniz mi?
- 13. Evini satın aldığınız kadın Fransaya gitti mi?
- 14. Buraya bir kaç defa geldikleri halde onlara hiç bir şey vermedik.
- 15. En güzel elmaları kimin satın aldığını söyledi mi?
- 16. Böyle bir şey yüz senede bir olmaz.

- 17. Kapıda kimi gördün?
  Birisi bundan yarım saat evvel gelmiş, efendim.
- 18. Trene binecek olanlar burada beklesinler.
- 19. Trene binecek olanların burada bekliyeceklerini söyledi.
- 20. Ahmedin parasını bulan kızın annesi parayı bana verdi.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. Who (is it who) wants the biggest of these apples?
- 2. What is the name of the woman to whom you sold your house?
- 3. Where did the man whose house you bought live?
- 4. Who broke the cup into which I had put the milk?
- 5. Ahmet didn't see who came.
- 6. Ahmet said he didn't see who came.
- 7. Ahmet asked me who was coming.
- 8. After phoning you I left the house.
- 9. Because you know Turkish well, will you please write them a letter?
- 10. He said that he would write them a letter.

# Lesson 17

-ki. Ki. Çünkü. The Professional Doer.

The Habitual Doer. Diminutives. Noun of Manner

- 1. Dünkü yağmur çok iyi oldu.
- 2. Bunlar seninkiler mi?
- 3. Babanız gazeteci midir? Hayır. Kitapçıdır.
- 4. Yazıcınız buraya gelsin, bu yazdığı mektubu bana okusun!
- Ahmedin söylediğine göre, gelmiyecekler.
- 6. Bir parçacık ekmek yemez misiniz?
- 7. Kadıncağız gelmesin!
- 8. Ufacık topla oynadılar.
- 9. Giriş (kapısı) hangi tarafta?
- Öğretmen çocuğunuzun çok anlayışlı olduğunu söyledi.

Yesterday's rain was certainly good.

Are these yours?

Is your father a journalist?

No, he's a book dealer.

Have your secretary come here and read me this letter that she (he) wrote!

According to what Ahmet says (said), they won't come.

Won't you eat just a tiny bit of bread?

I (we) hope that the poor woman won't come!

They played with a tiny ball.

Where (which way) is the entrance?

The teacher said that your child is very perceptive.

## I. -ki

The suffix -ki (an element which does not conform to vowel harmony) has three principal uses.

a. Attached to a substantive, it forms an adjective.

sabahki hava morning weather evvelki gün previous day dünkü yağmur yesterday's rain

With dün 'yesterday' and gün 'day' ki- does conform to vowel harmony.

b. Attached to a locative suffix, it forms an adjectival expression.

Amerikadaki çocuklar (the) children in America, (the) children who are in America

ağaçtaki çiçekler (the) flowers in the tree,

(the) flowers which are in the tree

Ağaçtakiler güzeldir.

The ones in the tree are pretty.

Are you one of those who are in these photos?

c. Attached to the possessive forms of nouns and personal pronouns, -ki produces the equivalents of English 'X's,' 'mine,' 'yours,' etc.

Where is Ahmet's? Ahmedinki nerede? O henimkidir. That's mine. Benimkiler bunlar. These are mine. Seninki nerededir? Where's yours? Onunki voktur. He hasn't got one. Bu onunkidir. This one is his. Bizimkiler bunlar. These are ours. Bu bizimkidir. This is ours. Onlar sizinkiler, Those are yours, değil mi? aren't they? Onlarınkiler nerede? Where are theirs? Onlarınki bu mudur? Is this one theirs?

When further suffixes are attached to forms in -ki, a buffer n is used.

Ahmedinkini kim gördü? Who has seen Ahmet's?

#### 2. Ki

The Persian relative 'kih' 'that' has been taken into Turkish as ki, along with its grammar.

Ismi Hasan olan bir There was a man whose name adam vardi. was Hasan.

Contrast Bir adam vardı ki ismi There was a man whose name was Hasan idi. Hasan (that his name was . . .).

Ki sometimes 'ends' an unfinished expression.

O kadar gördük ki!

We saw so much that (I can't begin to tell you)!

# 3. Çünkü

The Persian 'çünkü' 'because' also imports non-Turkish grammar into Turkish.

Hava fena olduğu için

Because the weather was bad, we didn't go.

gitmedik.

Contrast Gitmedik çünkü hava We didn'

fena idi.

We didn't go, because the weather was bad.

Note: Zira, also borrowed from Persian, is used in the same way as çünkü. Foreigners learning or using Turkish should avoid overuse of ki, çünkü, and zira. No matter how aptly the non-Turk may use these words, he will always be vulnerable to the charge 'That's not Turkish.'

# 4. The professional doer

The suffix -c/c V<sup>4</sup> added to a noun forms the noun which names the individual 'who does,' the professional. This suffix is frequently followed by -l V<sup>4</sup> k to form the name of the profession.

gazete newspaper gazeteci journalist gazetecilik journalism

banka

bankacı

ıcı bankacılık

bank

banker

banking, the banking business

kitap

kitapçı

kitapçılık

book

bookseller

the book business

## 5. The habitual doer

The suffix -(y) V<sup>4</sup> c V<sup>4</sup> added to a verb stem forms the noun of the habitual doer, the individual who customarily or habitually performs the action involved, or who incites others to do so.

yazıcı

writer, secretary, scribe (from yazmak 'to write')

görücü

(looker) the matchmaker of old-fashioned Turkish life,

go-between (from görmek 'to see')

## 6. Diminutives

Turkish makes extensive use of diminutives. They indicate smallness, affection, sarcasm, or contempt. The usual suffix is -ç/c V<sup>4</sup> k.

| oda    | room | odacık    | little room            |
|--------|------|-----------|------------------------|
| Hasan  |      | Hasancık  | little Hasan, good old |
|        |      |           | Hasan, pal Hasan       |
| Mehmet |      | Mehmetçik | Turkey's GI Joe,       |
|        |      |           | Tommy Atkins           |
| şair   | poet | şaircik   | poetaster, poetizer    |

A final k may drop out before the diminutive suffix.

| ufak  | small  | ufacık       | tiny      |
|-------|--------|--------------|-----------|
| küçük | little | küçücük      | tiny      |
| mini  | tiny   | minicik      | very tiny |
|       |        | mini minicik | minuscule |

Another diminutive suffix is -ç/c V<sup>2</sup> ğ i/1 z. It is usually used pityingly.

kadın woman kadıncağız poor woman

# 7. Noun of manner

The suffix -(y)  $V^4$  s added to a verb stem forms the noun of manner.

| gidiş   | going, way of going               |  |
|---------|-----------------------------------|--|
| anlayış | penetration, way of understanding |  |
| giriş   | entrance, way of going in         |  |
| çıkış   | exit, way of leaving              |  |

# Exercises

### A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- 1. Sizin gelmemenize rağmen, Ahmet parayı istemiyecek, değil mi?
- 2. Saati demir kutunun içinde bulacaksınız.
- 3. Anahtarı kapıcıdan alacağım, değil mi?
- 4. Otomobilin yok mu?
- 5. Fahrünnisanın o gün geleceğini bilmediler, değil mi?
- 6. Hangisini istedi?
- 7. Bunlar onunkiler değildir.
- 8. Renginin bembeyaz olduğunu söyledi.

- 9. Bunlardan en güzelini istediği bellidir.
- 10. Selma, buraya geldiği gün, Fahrünnisaya iki kilo kahve verdi.
- II. Benimkiler sizinkilerden iyidir.
- 12. Okuduğunuz kitabı nereye koyduğunuzu söylemez misiniz?
- 13. Okuduğum, kitap değildi. Ben bir haftalık mecmua okudum.
- 14. O adamın parası çokmuş. Babası da zenginmiş.
- 15. Babası zengin olduğu halde, Ahmedin çok parası yokmuş.
- 16. Buraya geldikten sonra, lisanı çok çabuk öğreneceksiniz.
- 17. Otomobilimi ona sattığım adamın kızının ismi Selmadır.
- 18. Ben onu görür görmez, Ahmet geldi.
- 19. Evinizdeki kitaplardan hangilerini alsınlar?
- 20. Bu küçücük halıya kaç para istedi?
- 21. Giriş nerede?
- 22. Erdoğanın söylediğine göre, onların evi çok güzelmiş.
- 23. Bu, böyle olacak bir şey değildir.
- 24. 'Ahmedin bana verdiği kitabı okumam' demeyin.
- 25. Mehmet, Ahmedin ona verdiği kitabı okumamıştı.
- 26. Bu evin kirası kaç?

Bu ev kiralık değildir.

Efendim, bütün şehirde kiralık ev yok mu?

Çok az var, fakat caminin karşısında iki tanesini bulacaksınız.

Size göre, ikisinden hangisi daha iyi?

Fikrimce, küçüğü iyidir.

- 27. İçtikleri suyu beğenmediler.
- 28. Sinema nasıl idi? Onu beğendiniz mi?
- 29. Yanlarındakiler kimler?
- 30. Onlar İstanbullu değillermiş, Antalyadan gelmişler.
- 31. Böyle şeyler söyliyecek bir kadın değildir.
- 32. Eski evlerin iki kısmı vardır: birisi selâmlık, yani erkeklerin kısmı; diğer kısım harem, yani kadınların kısmı.
- 33. Çocukluğumdan beri sinemaya hiç gitmedim.
- 34. 'Gelsin! Gelsin!' desinler. Ben gitmem.
- 35. Ondan hiç haber olmadığını söyliyecekler.

## B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- 1. Mother dear, please come here!
- 2. The apple trees in my garden are larger than those in yours.
- 3. The photographers all went to Ankara together.
- 4. This building has three exits.

- 5. Selma told me that her father is going to buy a new car.
- 6. Since Mehmet didn't come, I hope that Ahmet won't come either.
- 7. Doesn't your father have a secretary?
- 8. I didn't like the movie we saw last night.
- 9. Because the weather is very bad, we're not going to go to see them.
- 10. How much money did he want for the one in the bedroom?

# Lesson 18

Progressive Verb Forms.

Common Infinitive plus the Locative with 'to Be.'

Ordinals and Distributives. Gerundive in -(y) V<sup>2</sup>

- I. Ne diyorsunuz? Ahmet gitsin mi, gitmesin mi?
- 2. Nereye gidiyorlar?
- Beş seneden beri Türkiyede oturuyorduk.
- 4. Ankarada mı oturuyor?
- 5. Gazeteyi okumakta idiler.
- Ahmet İstanbula geldiği gün, ben Ankaraya dönmek üzereydim.
- Atınız dokuzuncu geldi, sonuncu geldi.
- 8. Çocuklarımız üçer sene Ankarada kaldılar.
- 9. Ayın kaçında gelecek?
- 10. Ne diye bize gelmiyorsunuz?

- What do you say? Ought Ahmet to go or not?
- Where are they going?
- We had been living in Turkey for five years.
- Does he live in Ankara?
- They were reading the paper.
- The day Ahmet came to Istanbul, I was just ready to go back to Ankara.
- Your horse came in ninth—last.
- Our children spent three years each in Ankara.
- What day of the month will he come?
- Why is it that you (never) come to see us?

# 1. Progressive verb forms

The progressive verb forms denote action still going on and not yet completed.

The suffixes of the present progressive verb forms are

|     | SINGULAR                  | PLURAL                             |
|-----|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ist | -(V)4 yorum               | -(V4) y o r u z                    |
| 2nd | -(V <sup>4</sup> ) yorsun | -(V <sup>4</sup> ) y o r s u n u z |
| 3rd | -(V4) y o r               | -(V4) y o r l a r                  |

The symbol (V4) in these forms denotes a vowel buffer. It is used after any positive verb stem which ends in a consonant. After a verb stem which ends in a vowel—this, of course, includes all negative verb stems—the (V4) buffer is omitted.

The final vowel of any verb stem (positive or negative) which ends in e or a is altered by the immediately following initial y of the progressive suffixes. The verb stem's final e becomes i; its final a becomes i. Hence the verb demek (der) forms diyorum 'I am saying,' etc.

The syllable yor is invariable and hence violates vowel harmony.

The past progressive verb forms use these suffixes

|     | SINGULAR          | PLURAL                    |
|-----|-------------------|---------------------------|
| Ist | -(V4) y o r d u m | -(V <sup>4</sup> ) yorduk |
| 2nd | -(V4) y o r d u n | -(V4) yordunuz            |
| 3rd | -(V4) y o r d u   | -(V4) yorlardı            |

Strictly, the present progressive verb forms gidiyorum means

I am (now in the action of) going.

(or) I (have been in the action of going and still) am going.

In ordinary use, however, gidiyorum frequently also may have a general sense.

Her gün gidiyorum. I am going daily.

The past progressive conveys the idea of 'used to be X-ing.'

I used to go (used to be in the action of going). Gidiyorum.

NOTE: İki seneden beri bu mektepte I have been working at this school for two

vears (and still am). calisiyorum. lki seneden beri o mektepte I had been working at that school for two calisivordum. years (but no longer am).

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE VERB FORMS

|      |      | POSITIVE   | INTERROGATIVE  |
|------|------|------------|----------------|
| sing | ular |            |                |
|      | Ist  | gidiyorum  | gidiyor muyum? |
|      | 2nd  | gidiyorsun | gidiyor musun? |
|      | 3rd  | gidiyor    | gidiyor mu?    |

| plural   |              |                        |
|----------|--------------|------------------------|
| ıst      | gidiyoruz    | gidiyor muyuz?         |
| 2nd      | gidiyorsunuz | gidiyor musunuz?       |
| 3rd      | gidiyorlar   | gidiyorlar mı?         |
|          | NEGATIVE     | NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE |
| singular |              |                        |
| ıst      | gitmiyorum   | gitmiyor muyum?        |
| and      | aitmiroran   | citminar museum 2      |

gitmiyorsun gitmiyor musun? 3rd gitmiyor gitmiyor mu?

plural

Ist gitmiyoruz gitmiyor muyuz? 2nd gitmiyorsunuz gitmiyor musunuz? gitmiyorlar gitmiyorlar mı? 3rd

# 2. Common infinitive plus the locative with 'to be'

Another present tense, much used in newspapers and narration, is the common infinitive plus the locative plus the present tense of 'to be.'

|     | SINGULAR     |                      | PLURAL          |
|-----|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| ıst | Gitmekteyim. | I am (in the act of) | Gitmekteyiz.    |
| 2nd | Gitmektesin. | going.               | Gitmektesiniz.  |
| 3rd | Gitmektedir. |                      | Gitmektedirler. |

The past tense of this form is

|     | SINGULAR      | PLURAL          |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|
| Ist | Gitmekteydim. | Gitmekteydik.   |
| 2nd | Gitmekteydin. | Gitmekteydiniz. |
| 3rd | Gitmekteydi.  | Gitmekteydiler. |

Note also this pattern.

gitmek üzere olmak to be on the point of going Gitmek üzereyim. I'm just going, just about to go. Gitmek üzereydim. I was just about to go.

# 3. Ordinals and distributives

The ordinals ('1st,' '2nd,' '3rd,' etc.) are formed with the suffix -(V4) n c V4. The distributives ('one by one,' 'by twos,' 'in threes,' etc.) are formed with the suffix -(s) V2 r.

| CARDINAL     | ORDINAL         | DISTRIBUTIVE |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| bir          | birinci (1inci) | birer        |
| iki          | ikinci (2nci)   | ikişer       |
| üç           | üçüncü (3üncü)  | üçer         |
| dört (dördü) | dördüncü        | dörder       |
| beş          | beşinci         | beşer        |
| altı         | altıncı         | altışar      |
| yedi         | yedinci         | yedişer      |
| sekiz        | sekizinci       | sekizer      |
| dokuz        | dokuzuncu       | dokuzar      |
| on           | onuncu          | onar         |
| on bir       | on birinci      | on birer     |
| yirmi        | yirminci        | yirmişer     |
| otuz         | otuzuncu        | otuzar       |
| kırk         | kırkıncı        | kırkar       |
| elli         | ellinci         | ellişer      |
| altmış       | altmışıncı      | altmışar     |
| yetmiş       | yetmişinci      | yetmişer     |
| seksen       | sekseninci      | seksener     |
| doksan       | doksanıncı      | doksanar     |
| yüz          | yüzüncü         | yüzer        |
| bin          | bininci         | biner        |
| on bin       | on bininci      | on biner     |
|              |                 |              |

The distributives are frequently said twice.

Birer birer geldiler. They came one by one.

Note also:

ilk (the) first son (the) last

kaçıncı? (the) how-manyeth?

# 4. Gerundive in -(y) V<sup>2</sup>

The suffix -(y) V<sup>2</sup> added to a verb stem makes a form comparable to the English verbal adjective in -ing.

koşmak to run koşa running (adjective) gülmek to laugh güle laughing

Koşa koşa geldi. He came on the run (running, running).

Güle güle gitti. He went laughingly.

One says to a person who has a new garment

Güle güle giyiniz!

Wear it in happiness!

To a person who has a new abode

Güle güle oturunuz! Live (dwell) there in happiness!

In Turkish, saying good-bye follows this pattern.

- a. Allaha ismarladik (usually contracted to Alasmaladik).
  - 'Well, I have decided to depart, good-bye.' (lit. 'We have commended [you] to God.' This is said by the person who is leaving.)
- b. Güle güle (gidiniz)!
  - 'Good-bye.' (lit. '[Go] laughing, laughing,' response of the person of whom leave is being taken.)

Note: From demek 'to say' (used with direct quotations) comes the gerundive dive 'saving.'

Kız 'Baban nerede' diye bana sordu.

The girl asked me, 'Where is your father?'

Dive may represent a pair of 'spoken' quotation marks.

Arkadaslar diye söze

basladı. Gitmek istemiyorum diye

bağırdı.

He began (his) speech with (the word) 'friends.'

He shouted, 'I don't want to go!'

Dive may also mean 'on the pretext that,' 'on the supposition that.'

Balık tutarım diye göle gitti.

He went to the lake, hoping (on the supposition) that he would catch some fish.

Ne dive is a frequent expression for 'why?'

Ne diye gelmediniz?

Why didn't you come?

# **Exercises**

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
  - 1. Biz sinemaya gidiyoruz, Hasan Bey. Siz de gelmiyor musunuz?
  - 2. Hangi sinemaya gidiyorsunuz?
  - 3. Kristal Sinemasına gidiyoruz. Çok iyi bir filim oynuyor. Geliniz. Çok beğeneceksiniz.
- 4. Doğrusu, Mehmet Bey, ben sinemayı pek sevmiyorum. Aynı zamanda çok işim var.

- Yazık, Hasan Bey, o halde siz işinizi görünüz. Biz gideceğiz. Allaha ısmarladık.
- Güle güle, efendim. İnşallah filim çok iyidir. Belki önümüzdeki hafta ben de o filmi göreceğim.
- Hasan Bey sinemaya gitmek üzereydi, fakat işi çok olduğundan vazgeçti, gitmedi.
- 8. Babası Pariste olan kızın ismini biliyor musunuz?
- 9. Biliyorum. İsmi Selmadır.
- 10. Babası Pariste kaldığı zaman, Selma nerede oturacak?
- Şimdiki halde yanımızda oturuyor. Gelecek ay, babası Fransadan döndükten sonra, onunla beraber kendi evlerinde oturacak.
- 12. Çocuklar mektepten ikişer ikişer çıktılar.
- 13. Biz hep yirmişer lira verdik.
- 14. Mihri, Mehmedin yarın geleceğini söylüyor.
- 15. Siz hakikaten geleceğine inanıyor musunuz?
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. This evening my father is working at home. Therefore I hope that he will give me the key to the car.
  - 2. What are you doing?
  - 3. I am writing a letter to my sister.
  - 4. Are you writing to your sister in Ankara or to the one in İzmir?
  - 5. To the one in İzmir.
- 6. I was on the point of going to Bursa, but my father didn't give me the money.
- 7. Believing that Ahmet had taken his book, Mehmet phoned Ahmet's father.
- 8. Sait writes to the effect that Ahmet will come tomorrow.
- 9. I'm going home. Good-bye, Mehmet.
- 10. Good-bye, Ahmet.

# Lesson 19

'To Be Able'

- Söylediklerimi anlıyabildiniz, değil mi?
- 2. Benimle gelebilir misin?
- 3. Gelemem.
- 4. Olacak mı?
- 5. Olabilir, Olabilir,
- 6. Olamaz!
- 7. Ben gidemez miyim?
- Okuyabildiğim kitaplar çoktur, okuyamadığım kitaplar azdır.
- Ahmet gelemiyeceğini söyliyecek, fakat gelebilecek.
- 10. İstediklerinizi bulamadılar.

You were able to understand what (the things that) I said, weren't you?

Can you come with me?

I can't (come).

Will it happen (work, turn out well)?

It may. It may (happen, etc.).

Impossible!(It cannot happen, etc.)

Can't I go? (Do you mean to say that I can't go?)

The books I've been able to read are numerous; those that I haven't been able to read are few.

Ahmet will say that he won't be able to come, but he'll be able to.

They couldn't find (the things) what you wanted.

## 'To be able'

The gerundive in -(y) V<sup>2</sup>—and not the verb stem—is the base on which various compound verb forms are built. Of these the most important are the forms composed of the gerundive in -(y) V<sup>2</sup> plus bilmek, the device by which

Turkish expresses the idea of 'to be able' ('to know how to'). In the negative, tense and person suffixes are added directly to the negative gerund. Forms of bilmek are not required.

common infinitive

| POSITIVE | NEGATIVE |
|----------|----------|

gidebilmek to be able to go, gidememek not to be able to go, being able to go not being able to go

past definite

singular

1stgidebildimgidemedim2ndgidebildingidemedin3rdgidebildigidemedi

plural

1stgidebildikgidemedik2ndgidebildinizgidemediniz3rdgidebildilergidemediler

past definite interrogative

singular

Ist gidebildim mi? gidemedim mi? etc. etc.

general forms

singular

Istgidebilirimgidemem2ndgidebilirsingidemezsinetc.etc.

general interrogative

singular

1st gidebilir miyim? gidemez miyim?
2nd gidebilir misin? gidemez misin?
etc. etc.

future

singular

1st gidebileceğim gidemiyeceğim 2nd gidebileceksin gidemiyeceksin etc. etc.

## future interrogative

singular

1st gidebilecek miyim? 2nd gidebilecek misin? etc.

gidemiyecek miyim? gidemiyecek misin? etc.

past indefinite

singular

1st **gidebilmişim** 2nd **gidebilmişsin** etc.

gidememişim gidememişsin etc.

past indefinite interrogative

singular

1st gidebilmiş miyim? 2nd gidebilmiş misin? etc. gidememiş miyim? gidememiş misin? etc.

present progressive

singular

1st **gidebiliyorum** 2nd **gidebiliyorsun** etc. gidemiyorum gidemiyorsun etc.

present progressive interrogative

singular

1st gidebiliyor muyum? 2nd gidebiliyor musun? etc. gidemiyor muyum? gidemiyor musun? etc.

past progressive

singular

1st gidebiliyordum 2nd gidebiliyordun etc.

gidemiyordum gidemiyordun etc.

past progressive interrogative

singular

Ist gidebiliyor muydum?
2nd gidebiliyor muydun?
etc.

gidemiyor muydum? gidemiyor muydun? etc. 3rd person imperatives

singular gidebilsin! gidemesin!
plural gidebilsinler! gidemesinler!

gerund in -t/d V4 k

gidebildik gidemedik

Note: The final e of a verb stem, positive or negative (e.g., *iste* and *isteme*) becomes i before the immediately suffixed y. The final a of a verb stem, positive or negative (e.g., anla, anlama) becomes i.

istiyebilmek istiyememek anlıyabilmek anlıyamamak

The negative general and future participles of the 'to be able' verb forms express the English 'too x to.'

kutuya giremiyecek kadar büyük

too big to go into the box

# Exercises

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
  - I. Otomobil daha çabuk gitmez mi? Daha çabuk gidemez.
  - 2. Pasaportunuzu aldıktan sonra oraya gidebilirsiniz.
  - 3. Caddedeki otomobilin kimin olduğunu bilmiyor musunuz?
  - 4. Yarın gelebileceğinizi ümit ediyoruz.
  - 5. (tramvayda)

Ön tarafa geçiniz, baylar. Orada boş yer çoktur. Burada inmek istiyen var mı? Galatasarayda inecek var mı?

6. (telefonda)

Alo, Alo! Orası neresi, efendim?

Burası İhsan Şirketi, efendim.

Ahmet Bey orada mı?

Hangi Ahmet Beyi istiyorsunuz, efendim?

Bay Ahmet Mehmetoğlu.

Hayır, efendim. Burada yokmuş. Her halde çıkmış. Bundan yarım saat evvel buradaydı.

Siz kimsiniz, efendim?

Ben Erdoğan Yılmaz.

Erdoğan Bey! Siz misiniz?

Benim, efendim. Ya siz?

Ben Ankarah Sait. Bugün geldim.

Maşallah, Sait Bey. Hoş geldiniz!

Hoş bulduk, Erdoğancığım. Nasılsın? İyi misin? İnşallah iyisin. Teşekkür ederim, Sait, çok iyiyim. Ya sen, sen nasılsın? Ben de iyiyim teşekkür ederim. Ne var ne yok, Erdoğancığım?

Eyvallah, Erdoğan Bey. Bir randevum var. Allaha ısmarladık. Ahmet Beye yarın tekrar telefon edeceğimi lûtfen söyler misin? Hay hay! Sait Bey. Söylerim. Güle güle, efendim!

- 7. Yaşlı kadın ağlıya ağlıya oturdu.
- 8. Çocuklarımın arkadaşlarından en küçüğü budur.
- 9. Onlara göre siz oraya iki defa gitmişsiniz.
- 10. Türkiyede göreceğiniz şehirlerden en büyüğü İstanbuldur.
- II. Ahmet, iki güzel halı satın aldığını yazdı.
- 12. Evinizin arkasında iki büyük ağaç mevcut olduğu doğru mudur?
- 13. Ahmet! Al bu parayı! Koşa koşa tütüncüye git, çabuk iki gazete al!
- 14. Gazeteleri alanın ismini biliyor musunuz?
- 15. Bu dünyada bundan daha güzel bir dağın mevcut olduğuna inanmıyorum.
- 16. Bu adam ne iş görüyor? Gazeteci midir? Öğretmen midir?
- 17. Süheylânın kızkardeşinin bizde iki üç gece kalacağım ümit ediyoruz.
- 18. Ne diye gelmedin, Ahmet?
- 19. Her sabah saat 9:30da buraya gelebileceksiniz, değil mi?
- 20. Her sabah buraya gelebileceğinize inanmam.

#### B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- 1. Ahmet said, 'I can't find my book.'
- 2. Ahmet said that he couldn't find his own book.
- 3. I hope that you can write me every week.
- 4. Why weren't you able to enter the building?
- 5. Will you be able to go to Ankara tomorrow?
- 6. May I come in?
- 7. I know you will be able to read this well.
- 8. Do you know why they weren't able to come?
- 9. It is evident that Ahmet won't be able to find the car key.
- 10. I can say that this is the best book I have ever read.

# Lesson 20

Auxiliary Verb. Optative-Subjunctive.

Necessity. Condition

- I. Süheylâ kimden bahsediyordu?
  Whom was Süheylâ talking about?
- 2. Ne yapıyorsunuz? Yazı yazıyorsunuz, değil mi? What are you doing? You're writing, aren't you?
- Geçen sene çok kar yağdı. It snowed a lot last year.
- 4. Ne dersiniz? Yağmur yağacak mı, yağmıyacak mı? What do you say? Is it going to rain, or not?
- 5. Gideyim mi?
  Should I go? (Ought I to go? Shall I go?)
- 6. Gidelim mi, gitmiyelim mi? Shall we go, or not? (Should we go, or not?)
- 7. Gitmeli değil miydik? Didn't we have to go?
- 8. Gitmemeliyim. I must not go.
- Gitmek mecburiyetindeydim.
   I had to (was obliged to) go.
- 10. İstanbulda ise hava çok güzeldi.
  In Istanbul, however, the weather was very fine.
- II. Oğlum, çalışmaktansa futbol oynamayı tercih etti.
  My son preferred to play football, instead of working.
- Kimse bilmez.Nobody knows.

# 13. Ne kadar para istersen iste! Ben sana beş kuruş vermem.

Ask for as much money as you want! I won't give you five kurus.

# 1. Auxiliary verb

Etmek (eder) is the usual auxiliary. An older auxiliary is eylemek. Both mean 'to do' and both are seldom used except as auxiliaries. The usual word for 'to do' is yapmak ('make,' 'do,' 'manufacture').

The auxiliary is used with numerous nouns, especially with Arabic infinitives.

teşekkür etmek to thank (to do the action teşekkür 'to render thanks')

bahsetmek to discuss, talk about

(with ablative), to mention

The old verb kılmak ('make,' 'do') today seldom appears except in the expression

namaz kılmak to perform the formal Moslem prayer ritual.

Yapmak sometimes is used as an auxiliary, especially when the auxiliary is in the relative gerundive form.

Ahmedin yaramazlık yaptığı gün

Some originally Arabic words, with the aid of no auxiliaries at all, retain their grammatical force, i.e., require suffixes on preceding words.

denize nazır bir oda a room looking onto (with dative) the sea Turkish frequently uses the cognate object.

yazı yazmak to write (writing)
yemek yemek to eat (food)

Sometimes a cognate subject is used.

Yağmur yağıyor. It's raining. (Rain is raining.)

# 2. Optative-subjunctive

The ideas of 'may' and 'might' can be expressed by the optative-subjunctive verb forms. Their suffixes, added to the gerundive (and not to the verb stem), are

|            | SINGULAR        | PLURAL              |
|------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1st person | -y i/1 m        | -1 i/1 m            |
| 2nd person | -s i/1 n        | -s i/1 n i/1 z      |
| 3rd person | -V <sup>2</sup> | -1 V <sup>2</sup> r |

### PRESENT OPTATIVE-SUBJUNCTIVE VERB FORMS

|                          | POSITIVE             |                         | NEGATIVE                   |
|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| singular                 |                      |                         |                            |
| 1st person               | gideyim              | that I may,<br>might go | gitmeyeyim                 |
| 2nd person               | gidesin              |                         | gitmeyesin                 |
| 3rd person               | gide                 |                         | gitmeye                    |
| plural                   |                      |                         |                            |
| 1st person<br>2nd person | gidelim<br>gidesiniz |                         | gitmeyelim<br>gitmeyesiniz |
| 3rd person               | gideler              |                         | gitmeyeler                 |

#### INTERROGATIVE

|            | POSITIVE    | NEGATIVE       |
|------------|-------------|----------------|
| singular   |             |                |
| 1st person | gideyim mi? | gitmeyeyim mi? |
| plural     |             |                |
| 1st person | gidelim mi? | gitmeyelim mi? |

Rather than the third person present optative-subjunctive forms, Turkish favors the use of the third person imperatives. (See Lesson 7, section 4.)

### PAST

The optative-subjunctive past forms are seldom used. For the expression of hopeless wishes use of the conditional is more common.

| singular                                |                                      |                    |   |
|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---|
| 1st person                              | POSITIVE<br>geleydim                 | I should have gone | NEGATIVE<br>gelmeyeydim                       |
| 2nd person<br>3rd person                | geleydin<br>geleydi                  |                    | gelmeyeydin<br>gelmeyeydi                     |
| plural Ist person 2nd person 3rd person | geleydik<br>geleydiniz<br>geleydiler |                    | gelmeyeydik<br>gelmeyeydiniz<br>gelmeyeydiler |
| NTERROGATIVE<br>singular                |                                      |                    |   |

### In

| 1st person | geleydim mi? | gelmeyeydim mi? |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 2nd person | geleydin mi? | gelmeyeydin mi? |
|            | etc.         | etc.            |

# 3. Necessity

English 'have to,' 'must,' 'obliged to,' etc., are most frequently expressed by the suffix

### -m V2 1 i/1

added directly to the verb stem (positive or negative) and followed by the required form of the verb 'to be.'

#### PRESENT

|            | POSITIVE             |               | NEGATIVE       |
|------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------|
| singular   |                      |               |                |
| 1st person | Gitmeliyim           | I have to go. | Gitmemeliyim   |
| 2nd person | Gitmelisin           |               | Gitmemelisin   |
| 3rd person | Gitmeli(dir)         |               | Gitmemeli(dir) |
| plural     |                      |               |                |
| 1st person | Gitmeliyiz           |               | Gitmemeliyiz   |
| 2nd person | <b>G</b> itmelisiniz |               | Gitmemelisiniz |

#### PRESENT INTERROGATIVE

3rd person

|            | POSITIVE         | NEGATIVE           |
|------------|------------------|--------------------|
| singular   |                  |                    |
| 1st person | Gitmeli miyim?   | Gitmemeli miyim?   |
| 2nd person | Gitmeli misin?   | Gitmemeli misin?   |
| 3rd person | Gitmeli mi(dir)? | Gitmemeli mi(dir)? |
| plural     |                  |                    |
| 1st person | Gitmeli miyiz?   | Gitmemeli miyiz?   |
| 2nd person | Gitmeli misiniz? | Gitmemeli misiniz? |
| 3rd person | Gitmeliler mi?   | Gitmemeliler mi?   |

The third singular forms may be used impersonally.

Getmeli(dir)ler

| Oraya gitmeli.   | It's necessary to go there. One should (has to) go there. |
|------------------|---|
| Oraya gitmemeli. | It's necessary not to go there. One should not go there.  |

Compare with this usage the following patterns.

| Oraya gitmek lâzım(dır). | It is necessary to go there.    |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Oraya gitmek gerek(tir). | It is right (proper, necessary) |
|                          | to go there.                    |

Gitmemeli(dir)ler

The noun *mecburiyet* 'obligation,' 'necessity' furnishes another frequently used means of expressing necessity.

Gitmek mechanisetindeyim. I must go. (I am in the necessity of going.)

Gitmek mechanisetinde Did they have to go? (Were they

miydiler? Did they have to go? (Were they in the necessity of going?)

## 4. Condition

The sign of the conditional has two forms.

a. -s V2 (suffix)

b. ise (independent word)

The conditional sign may follow a substantive.

o ise, he, however; as for him; if he (i.e., if you mean him...)

kitapta ise in the book, however; if in the book

(i.e., if you mean in the book . . .)

ne ise, nevse nevertheless: even so: be that as it may

her neden ise, her nedense for whatever reason (her) nasilsa some way or other

yoksa or else

kimse nobody, no one (used with other

negatives), someone

Evde kimse yok. There's nobody home.

Kimsevi bulamadım. I couldn't find anybody.

Note particularly this pattern

gitmektense rather than going

Ben, sinemaya gitmektense Instead of going to the movies,

evde kalmayı tercih ettim. I preferred to stay home.

The suffixes of the present conditional verb forms, added directly to the verb stem, positive or negative, are

|            | SINGULAR            | PLURAL                               |
|------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1st person | -s V <sup>2</sup> m | -s V <sup>2</sup> k                  |
| 2nd person | -s V <sup>2</sup> n | -s V2 n i/1 z                        |
| 3rd person | -s V <sup>2</sup>   | -s V <sup>2</sup> 1 V <sup>2</sup> r |

#### PRESENT CONDITIONAL

|  | POSITIVE                       | NEGATIVE                             |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| singular                               |                                |                                      |
| 1st person<br>2nd person<br>3rd person | gitsem<br>gitsen<br>gitse      | gitmesem<br>gitmesen<br>gitmese      |
| plural                                 |                                |                                      |
| 1st person<br>2nd person<br>3rd person | gitsek<br>gitseniz<br>gitseler | gitmesek<br>gitmeseniz<br>gitmeseler |

Used alone—in an unfinished condition or in a question—these forms may mean 'Wouldn't it be a good idea if . . . ?'

| Haydi, ne dersin?       |
|-------------------------|
| Kalksak, denize girsek? |
| O gitmese mi?           |

Well, what do you say? Wouldn't it be nice if we got up and went into the water?

Is there any reason why he shouldn't go?

#### GENERAL CONDITIONAL

The general conditional verb forms are frequently used in expressing such indefinites as English 'whoever,' 'whatever,' 'wherever,' and 'whenever.'

| Kim     | isterse | aitein   |
|---------|---------|----------|
| IXIIIII | merse   | ZILSIII. |

- O ne söylerse söylesin, doğru değildir.
- O kız nereye giderse gitsin, ben Ankaraya gitmem.
- (Her) ne zaman giderse gitsin, ben geleceğim.

Whoever wants to go, may.

No matter what he says (whatever he may say, let him say [it]), it's not so.

No matter where that girl goes, I'm not going to Ankara.

No matter when he goes, I'll come.

The interrogative may also express a condition.

Beni gördü mü kaçar.

When he sees me, he runs off. If he sees me, he flees.

# Exercises

## A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- I. Niçin yemeğinizi yemediniz?
- 2. Siz ne dersiniz efendim, oraya bugün gideyim mi, gitmeyeyim mi?
- 3. Kim gelirse gelsin, ben bu kitabı yalmz Ahmet Beye vereceğim.
- 4. Siz hakikaten bir saat sonra gitmeli misiniz?

- 5. Elinizdeki saate şöyle bir bakarsanız, saatin 9:30 olduğunu göreceksiniz.
- 6. Yarın hiç kimsenin buraya gelemiyeceğinden korkarım.
- 7. Onlar derhal buraya gelmek mecburiyetinde değildiler.
- 8. Niçin telefon edemediğini biliyor musunuz?
- 9. Şehrimizde kar yağmaz.
- 10. Erdoğanın karısı, kendi annesinin iki ay kadar çok hasta olduğunu, fakat ondan sonra tekrar Ankaraya gittiğini söyledi.
- Siz ne söylerseniz söyleyiniz, onların gitmeye hazır olduklarını kendi gözlerimle gördüm.
- 12. Büyük kutunuzdan aldığı saati size tekrar vermezse hakikati annesine söylemek mecburiyetinde kalacaksımz, değil mi?
- 13. Nasıl isterse öyle yapsın!
- 14. Haydi, çocuklar! Vakit geçiyor. Haydi gidelim.
- 15. Efendim, müsaadenizle ekmeğinizden ufak bir parça alayım mı?
- 16. Oğlum, okula gitmektense sinemaya gitmeyi tercih etti.
- 17. Ahmedin dün bize tarif ettiği kitapçı dükkânının nerede olduğunu bilmiyorsunuz, değil mi?
- 18. Gitmediğini söylemediler, değil mi?
- 19. Gitmiyeceğini söyleyemediler, değil mi?
- 20. Gelemiyeceğinden haberiniz yok mu?
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - I. May I give you a cup of tea, sir?
  - 2. If I don't go, won't you go either?
  - 3. What shall we talk about?
  - 4. Did you really have to go?
  - 5. Do you really have to go?
  - 6. What do you say? Ought we to go, or not?
  - 7. If he comes, we'll give him the book.
  - 8. They, however, could not go.
  - 9. Say, 'Thank you, sir!'
- 10. He didn't have to give us the money.

# Lesson 21

Passive Verbs. The Agent.

Causative, Reflexive, and Mutual Verbs

I. Bu kitap kimin tarafından yazıldı?

By whom was this book written?

- 2. Gitmemize müsaade edilecek mi? Will permission be given for us to go (for our going)?
- 3. Anlatabildim mi?

Have I succeeded in making myself clear (in explaining myself)?

4. Bunun sebebi bilinmez.

The reason for this is not known.

5. Onlar hiç görüşmezler.

They never talk to each other.

6. Bu yemeğe alıştım.

I grew accustomed to this food.

7. Bize onu sormadılar.

They didn't ask us that.

8. Cocuk yıkandı.

The child washed himself.

9. Çocuğu yıkadık.

We bathed the child.

10. Bana hiç bir şey öğretemedi.

He was unable to teach me a thing.

## 1. Passive verbs

The formation of the passive depends upon the final sound of the verb stem.

a. Most verbs whose stems end in a vowel form the passive by adding n.

söylemek to say söylenmek to be said okumak to read okunmak to be read

b. Most verbs whose stems end in a consonant other than -l form the passive by adding  $-V^4$  l.

kırmak to break (transitive) kırılmak to be broken vermek to give verilmek to be given

c. Verbs whose stems end in -l form the passive by adding -V4 n.

bilmek to know bilinmek to be known bulmak to find bulunmak to be found

Note: bulunmak, 'to be found' (and 'to find one's self,' cf. French se trouver) is frequently used to mean 'to be' or 'to exist.'

The negative forms of the passive present no difficulties.

söylememek söylenmemek okumamak okunmamak kırmamak kırılmamak vermemek verilmemek bilmemek bulmamak bulunmamak

The passive is very frequent in Turkish. It has two principal functions.

a. that of the English passive

Saatim nerede bulundu? Where was my watch found?
Saatim kırıldı. My watch was broken (was smashed).

b. that of the English active intransitive of such verbs as 'to break.' Note that English 'to break' has two meanings: a transitive meaning which requires an object—'I broke my watch.' and an intransitive meaning which requires no object—'My watch broke.'

Turkish kırmak 'to break' (transitive) expresses only the first of these meanings ('I broke my watch.') To express the second ('My watch broke.'), Turkish uses the passive. Hence the Turkish passive may have two connotations.

Saatim kırıldı. My watch was broken. (passive)
Saatim kırıldı. My watch broke. (active intransitive)

Many intransitive (active voice) Turkish verbs may take a passive form, thereby expressing the English impersonal.

olmak, olunmak

Rica olunur (or Rica edilir).

It is requested.

gitmek, gidilmek

İstanbula nasıl gidilir?

How does one go to Istanbul?

Confusion seldom arises between

Saatim kırıldı.

My watch was smashed.

and

Saatim kırıldı.

My watch broke.

# 2. The agent

Ambiguity may always be avoided by expressing the agent with the passive. The agent is shown by the noun taraf in a possessive construction plus the ablative.

(benim) tarafımdan (senin) tarafından onun tarafından

by me by you by him (her, it) (sizin) tarafınızdan onların tarafından otomobil tarafından by you by them by the auto-

(bizim) tarafımızdan

by us

mobile

Another means of expressing the agent is the suffix -c/c V<sup>2</sup>.

hükümetçe

by (the) government

# 3. Causative verbs

Most verbs form the causative by adding -t/d V4 r.

from bilmek, bildirmek

to inform, assert, announce, communicate;

to cause (someone) to know (something),

etc.

Bunu ona bildirdiler.

They caused this to be known to him.

They informed him of this.

Bu ona bildirildi.

This was made known to him.

Verbs whose stems end in a vowel add only a -t.

from anlamak, anlatmak

to explain, recount, etc.

Mektubu bana anlattı. Mektup bana anlatıldı.

He explained the letter to me. The letter was explained to me. Verbs whose stems end in c or s add -V<sup>4</sup> r.

from içmek, içirmek to cause (someone) to drink (something)

Sütü çocuğa içirdiler. They made the child drink the milk (got

the child to drink it, gave it to the child

to drink).

Çocuklara süt içirilir. Children are made to drink milk (are

given milk to drink).

Polysyllabic verb stems ending in r or l add only a -t.

from oturmak, oturtmak to cause someone to sit down or

dwell in (with objective definite)

Beni Ankarada oturttular. They made me live in Ankara (settled

me there, got me quarters there, stationed me there, etc.).

Ankarada oturtuldum. I was made to live in Ankara.

The negative forms of the causative present no difficulties.

bildirmek bildirmemek bildirilmek bildirilmemek anlatmak anlatmamak anlatılmak anlatılmamak icirmek icirmemek icirilmek icirilmemek oturtmak oturtmamak oturtulmak oturtulmamak

# 4. Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verb forms usually add the suffix -(V4) n.

giymek to wear (clothes: transitive)

giyinmek to dress oneself

giyindirmek to clothe (someone else)

giyindirilmek to be clothed (by someone else)

## 5. Mutual verbs

The mutual or reciprocal verb forms add the suffix  $-(V^4)$  ş. The basic connotation is mutuality of action.

carpmak to hit, strike against (with dative)

çarpışmak to collide, (for two or more) to hit each other

carpistirmak to cause to collide with each other

carpistirilmak to be caused to collide

görmek to see

görüşmek to converse, talk together görüşülmek to be conversed about

görüştürmek to make to converse with each other görüştürülmek to be made to converse with each other

bulmak to find

buluşmak (for two or more) to meet together buluşturulmak to be caused to meet or get together

Note: A verb may be reciprocal in form although its meaning today retains little if any trace of the idea of mutuality.

kaçmak to flee

kaçışmak (for all) to flee,

run off in different directions

gelmek to come gelişmek to flourish,

to develop (intransitive)

almak to take

alişmak to accustom, familiarize oneself with

(with dative), become accustomed to

(with dative)

## Exercises

- A. Practice aloud. Translate.
  - I. Çay fincanı kırılmış mıydı?
  - 2. Bana göre o hakikaten bilinmez bir şeydir.
  - 3. O adam tarafından yazılan kitaplar bu günlerde güçlük ile bulunuyor.
  - 4. Dün Ahmet Beyoğlunda bulundu.
- 5. Fincan tarafımzdan mı kırıldı?
- 6. Haber hükümetçe resmen bildirilmiş.
- 7. Beni bir iskemleye oturttular ve gitmeme müsaade etmediler.
- 8. Ben gitmeliyim, efendim. Zaten geç kaldım. Şimdilik, Allaha ısmarladık. Güle güle, Mehmet Bey. Yine görüşürüz, inşallah.
- 9. Büyük kutu kapıdan geçmedi. Onun için pencereden indirildi.
- 10. O adamın evimize hiç gelmediği söylenemez. Üç beş defa geldi.
- Ahmet hakkında iki saat konuştuk. Ondan sonra karar verdik. Her şey anlaşıldı.
- 12. Onlar ne söylerlerse söylesinler, biz oraya gitmene müsaade etmeyiz.

- 13. Size yardım edeyim, efendim!
- 14. İki tane üçüncü mevki bilet istiyorum, lûtfen.
- 15. Kendi söylediklerinizi unuttunuz mu?
- 16. Bu ev kimin tarafından yapıldı?
- 17. Parayı nereye koyduklarını sormadınız mı?
- 18. Bana onu sormayın!
- 19. Denizde yıkandılar.
- İzmire Cuma günü gitmek mecburiyetinde kalırsam ne yapacağımı bilmiyorum.
- 21. Bu yeni fabrikalar geliştirilmektedir.
- 22. Söylenildiğine göre o İstanbuldan hiç dönmiyecek.
- 23. Çalışmazsanız öğrenemiyeceksiniz.
- 24. Size Türkçeyi kim öğretiyor?
- 25. Eski Türkçedeki 'talebe' kelimesinin yerine bugün 'öğrenci' kelimesi daha çok kullanılıyor.
- B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.
  - 1. This water is undrinkable (not to be drunk).
  - 2. We'll meet in Adana next week. It's agreed (understood).
  - 3. This tobacco is imported from Turkey.
  - 4. Ahmet had Mehmet import the tobacco.
  - 5. One can't get to Izmir by this road.
  - 6. The road is being caused to be widened.
  - 7. Get dressed quickly, son!
  - 8. This news was communicated by the government.
  - 9. Be careful! That is fragile (breakable)!
- 10. His handwriting is illegible.

# Lesson 22

Abbreviating Verb Forms. Attendant Circumstances. Verb Form in -(y) V<sup>4</sup> n c V<sup>2</sup>. Verb Form in -t/d V<sup>4</sup> k ç V<sup>2</sup>

- Dün evinize gelip annenizi gördüm.
   Yesterday I came to your house and saw your mother.
- Dün evinize gidip annenizi görmedim.
   Yesterday I didn't go and see your mother.
- Dün Ahmede gitmeyip size geldim.
   Yesterday I didn't go Ahmet's, I came to your place.
- 4. Atatürk Bulvarından geçerken sizi gördüm. I saw you as I was crossing Atatürk Boulevard.
- O İstanbula gelerek bir ev aradı.
   He came to Istanbul and hunted for a house.
- Babasını görünce çok sevindi.
   He was very happy when he saw his father.
- 7. O, gazete okudukça kızar.
  Whenever he reads (a) paper, he gets angry.
- Çocuk çok büyüdü.
   The child grew a great deal.
- Selma iyileşti.
   Selma improved.
- 10. Ahmet birdenbire ihtiyarladı.Ahmet grew old all of a sudden.

# 1. Abbreviating verb forms

Turkish has two time-saving devices to avoid the necessity of repeating lengthy verb endings in such sentences as 'They had come to the house, seen all their friends, and then gone back home.' Note that all the verbs in this sentence are identical in person, number, and tense.

a. The first of these devices is simply to omit part of the ending of each verb until the final verb is reached. Then the last verb gets the full set of suffixes, and these are understood as serving for all the verbs.

Efendim, sizi tebrik eder, teşekkür eder, saygılarımı sunarım. 'Sir, I congratulate you, thank (you), and tender my regards.' In its full form, the sentence would be: Efendim, sizi tebrik ederim, teşekkür ederim ve saygılarımı sunarım. With the abbreviating forms, no coordinate conjunction is used.

This device is not used with the past definite forms.

b. The second abbreviating device is -(y) V<sup>4</sup> p. In such a sentence as 'They came and saw.' the first verb receives only the abbreviating suffix, the second verb receives all necessary suffixes. The first verb is understood to bear all the suffixes of the second.

If both verbs in the sentence have a negative meaning, the first verb does not necessarily require the negative syllable. The negative of the second verb may serve for both. If the first verb is negative and the second positive, the  $-(y) V^4 p$  is used with the negative verb stem.

This device should never be used more than once in any sentence. No coordinating conjunction may intervene between the form with the abbreviating suffix and the second verb.

gidip gelmek

O gün Ahmet okula gidip

sizi gördü.

O gün Ahmet sizi gelip görmedi.

O gün Ahmet okula gitmeyip sizi gördü.

to go and come

That day, Ahmet went to school and saw you.

That day, Ahmet didn't come and see you.

That day Ahmet didn't go to school but did see you.

The abbreviating verb plus the relative gerundive furnish the Turkish expression for 'whether or not.'

Onun gelip gelmediğini bilmiyorum.

I don't know whether or not he came (has come).

## 2. Attendant circumstance

Turkish has two participles to convey the idea of attending circumstance. The action expressed by the participle was (is, will be) simultaneous with that expressed by the following main verb.

a. The first of these two Turkish circumstantial participles employs the present participle of 'to be.'

*iken* (independent word) or -ken (enclitic which ignores vowel harmony)

Ben burada iken Mehmet Ankara gitti. Siz burada iken Hasan

While I was here, Mehmet went to Ankara. While you're here, Hasan won't come to our house.

*İken* and *-ken* combine with many verb forms, especially with the general participle.

gider iken or giderken okur iken or okurken Cebimde para yokken siz hiç bir şey istemiyeceksiniz.

bize gelmivecek.

while going while reading

Ben yapma yapma derken o

ağlamaya basladı.

So long as I have no money in my pocket, you won't ask for a thing.

While I was (still) saying, "Don't! Don't!' he started to bawl.

Derken, used alone, means 'While X was still saying . . .' 'Before you could say Jack Robinson.'

Derken, Mehmet geldi.

Whereupon, Mehmet came.

b. The second of the Turkish circumstantial participles is formed by the suffix -(y) V<sup>2</sup> r V<sup>2</sup> k.

This form denotes an action or circumstance which accompanies the action expressed by the following main verb. Frequently the two verb forms best translate as coordinates.

Evime gelerek para istedi.

He came to my house and asked for money.

Evime gelerek beni bulamayıp gittiler.

They came to my house, couldn't find me, and went away.

# 3. Verb form in -(y) V4 n c V2

This suffix expresses the ideas of 'upon (his coming),' 'the moment that (he came),' etc.

Necdet sizi görünce kim bilir

ne divecek?

Cocuklar derslerini bitirince

bahçeye gittiler.

Who knows what Necdet will say when

he sees you?

The children went to the garden when they had finished their lessons.

With the postposition kadar, this suffix has the sense of 'until,' 'up to the moment that,' etc.

Siz gelinceye kadar ben burada kalacağım.

I'll stay here until you come.

# 4. Verb form in -t/d V4 k c V2

This form expresses the ideas of 'when,' 'whenever,' etc.

Onu gördükçe kız ağladı. Onu gördükçe ağlar.

Whenever she saw it, the girl wept. Whenever he sees it, he weeps.

# 5. Derived verbs

The four principal means by which verbs are derived from substantives or modifiers are

# a. The suffix -1 V2

ihtiyar aged

ihtivarlamak to grow old

ihtivarlatmak to age (transitive) ihtivarlatılmak to be caused to age

kolay easy

kolaylamak to facilitate; (of a task) to be almost done (intransi-

tive); to get (a task) almost finished (transitive)

kolaylatmak to make (a task) easy

kolavlanmak (of a task) to become easier (or) nearly finished

kolaylandırmak to make or permit (a task) to become easy of execu-

tion (or) nearly finished

kolaylastırmak to make (something) become easier; gradually to

get (a task) nearly finished

kolaylastırılmak (for something) to be made easier and easier; (for a

task) to be got to the place where it is almost done

## b. The suffix -1 V2 n

beyaz white

beyazlanmak to grow white

beyazlatmak to bleach, whiten (transitive) bevazlatılmak to be bleached, whitened

ümit hope

ümitlenmek to become hopeful

ümitlendirmek to make (someone or something) hopeful

ümitlendirilmek to be made hopeful

## c. The suffix -V21

az few, little

azalmakto diminish (intransitive)azaltmakto reduce or lessenazaltılmakto be diminishedcokmuch, many, very

çoğalmak to increase (intransitive), to grow

coğaltmak to increase (transitive), to make grow, to aug-

ment

çoğaltılmak to be increased, be made grow

Compare küçük small

küçülmek to grow smaller

küçültmek to make smaller, belittle küçültülmek to be made smaller, belittled

d. The suffix -1 V2 s

hir one

birleşmek to come together, meet together, unite

(intransitive)

birleştirmek to bring together, unite (transitive)
birleştirilmek to be brought together, united

ivi good, well

iyileşmek to get better, get well, improve

(intransitive)

iyileştirmek to make better, make well, improve

(transitive)

iyileştirilmek to be made better, well; to be improved

Note: Study of the above forms will demonstrate that they are parts of a living, human (and therefore illogical) speech, not of a rigid system. Therefore, the student's goal should be not to attempt to coin new forms 'by rule,' but to learn the forms which the Turks actually use.

# Exercises

## A. Practice aloud. Translate.

- I. Ahmet Beyin yarın bizimle beraber sinemaya gidip gitmiyeceğini bilmiyorsunuz, değil mi?
- Ben Beyoğlunda iken hırsızın biri evime girerek köpeğimi susturup iki güzel halı ile beş yüz lira aldı.
- 3. Çocukları susturamadıklarından dolayı öğretmenler onların babalarına birer şikâyet mektubu yazdılar.
- Maşallah, Erdoğan Bey! Oğlunuz ne kadar büyüdü! Gözlerime inanamıyorum.
- Arkadaşlarınızdan hangilerinin gelebileceklerini bilmediğimiz için yemeği hangi lokantada yiyeceğimize henüz karar vermedik.
- Süheylâ Hanımın hastaladığından beri kaç ay geçtiğini iyice hatırlıyamıyorum.
- 7. Benim o gün gelemiyeceğimi onlar çoktan beri biliyorlardı. O halde onların bunu size niye hatırlatmadıklarını bir türlü anlıyamıyorum.
- 8. Kız babasını görünce hem koşmaya hem ağlamaya başladı.
- Eğer İstanbulda iki haftadan fazla kalmak mecburiyetinde kalırsam sizinle Ankarada buluşamam.
- 10. Annenin senin o hafta Ankarada bulunduğunu bilip bilmediğinden emin olmadığım için, orada çektiğim fotoğrafı ne ona gösterdim, ne de babana.
- II. Oraya gitmeyip burada kalmaya karar verirlerse, size gönderilmesine söz verdiğim kitapları benden istiyeceklerinden eminim.
- 12. Ankarada oturmaktansa İstanbulda oturman daha mı iyi?
- 13. Bilindiği gibi bayram günlerinde kütüphaneye girilmez.
- 14. Kapı açılınca çocuklar yerlerine koşup oturdular.
- 15. Onlar, birleştirilmezlerse istediklerini yapamıyacaklar.
- 16. Doktor her gün kliniğine gider, hastalarını kabul ederdi.
- 17. Gitmezsen ne olur?
- 18. Oraya hiç gitmememe rağmen bana haftada bir mektup yazıyor, daima beni beklediklerini söylüyorlar.
- 19. Hava fena olduğu için yüzmeye gitmedik.
- 20. Görmenin inanmak olduğunu unuttunuz mu?

#### B. Write in Turkish. Practice aloud.

- 1. Opening the door, he got into his car and left.
- 2. Don't forget that the world has grown smaller.
- 3. Do you know whether Ahmet had read this book?

- 4. Working hard, he learned Turkish well.
- 5. Prices went up increasingly.
- 6. As he was leaving, he gave me a lira.
- 7. It will be very good if we go there and give him a little money.
- 8. They wanted not to go there but to stay here.
- 9. They decided not to go there but to stay here.
- 10. He says they have decided not to go there but to stay here.

# Statement on Verb Forms.

# True and Untrue Conditions

## I. Statement on verb forms

The student who has mastered the material presented in the preceding lessons will now recognize, understand, and begin to be able to use the fundamental patterns of Turkish. The following tabulation of possible verb forms should help him identify the many combinations he will encounter as he uses the language.

These eight basic forms of the Turkish verb are familiar.

#### 3RD PERSON SINGULAR

| Ι. | past definite         | gitti   |
|----|-----------------------|---------|
| 2. | general               | gider   |
| 3. | future                | gidecek |
| 4. | past indefinite       | gitmiş  |
| 5. | progressive (present) | gidiyor |
| 6. | optative-subjunctive  | gide    |
| 7. | verb of necessity     | gitmeli |
| 8. | conditional           | gitse   |

Disregarding infinitives, imperatives, and participles, the above eight forms represent the eight principal categories—or eight main lines of inflection—needed for comprehension of the entire Turkish verb system.

To use a figure of speech from the vocabulary of music, we may assert that in the symphony or harmony of Turkish speech, these eight categories are the verb system's eight principal themes. In music any given theme may be played, with strikingly different results, in more than one key. In the same way, we may say that the Turkish language has three keys and that most

of the above eight themes may be put into each of the three keys, again with strikingly different results.

The three keys in Turkish are: the antedating key, the disclaiming key, and the provisional key.

#### a. ANTEDATING FORMS

The antedating key is formed by adding the past forms (independent or suffixed) of the verb 'to be' (see Lesson 14) to the third person singular theme form.

When any one of the eight themes is put into the antedating key, the time value of that theme's forms is thereby moved backward one notch (is 'antedated').

## b. DISCLAIMING FORMS

This key is formed by adding the indefinite forms of the verb 'to be' (independent or suffixed) to the third person singular theme form.

When a theme is put into this key, the speaker (or writer) disclaims any personal knowledge of the accurateness of the assertion he is making.

When the past indefinite theme is put into the disclaiming key, the result is the strongest possible disclaimer of responsibility for the validity of the assertion.

There are no past definite disclaiming forms. One cannot logically disclaim and vouch for accuracy in one verb form.

Note: The analogy of musical themes and keys must not be pushed too far. The forms of a Turkish verb theme may stand in more than one key at the same time. Thus, each of the disclaimed theme verb forms may—when desired—also be antedated.

### c. Provisional forms

The last of the three keys—the provisional—is formed with the conditional of the verb 'to be.' The conditional theme, naturally, does not occur in this key and neither does the optative-subjunctive theme. Verb forms put into the conditional key express the ideas of proviso or supposition.

Provided I go . . .
Suppose I go . . .
If I go . . ., etc.

# 2. True conditions

Conditions present two main types, true and untrue. The subject (i.e., the speaker or writer), speaking objectively, voices a simple 'if' without indicating

or hinting whether he regards the proviso which he enunciates as being true or false, likely or unlikely, possible or impossible, etc.

In a true condition the conditional forms of the verb 'to be' (i.e., the provisional key) are added to the base (third person singular) of the appropriate verb of the protasis (the 'if' part of the condition). The apodosis (the 'why then' part of the condition) has its verb form exactly as that verb would be were no proviso stipulated at all.

True conditions can be classified according to the time value of the protasis verb.

Protasis verb is past.

Parayı gördü isen (gördüysen) bana söyle.
Parayı gördü ise (gördüyse) bana söyliyecek.
If he saw the money, he'll tell me.
Parayı görmüş ise (görmüşse) bana söyliyecek.
If he saw (has seen) the money, he'll tell me.

Protasis verb is present.

O geliyor ise (geliyorsa) siz gitmelisiniz. If he is (now) coming, you must go.

Protasis verb is future.

O Ankarada kalacak ise (kalacaksa) annesi hasta değildir. If he is going to stay in Ankara, his mother is not sick.

Note: Many protasis verbs have a vague time value, present or future. For example,

Parayı istersen, söyle.

If you want the money, say (so).

Parayı bulamazsan söyle.

If you can't find the money, say so.

Adamı görürsen bana söyle.

If you see the man, tell me (so).

Adamı görürsen bana söyliyeceksin, değil mi?

If you see the man, you'll tell me, won't you?

# 3. Untrue conditions

The subject (i.e., the speaker or writer), speaking subjectively, not only says 'if' but also states or hints whether he regards the proviso he is enunciating as being true or untrue, likely or unlikely, possible or impossible, etc.

In an untrue condition, the protasis verb is conditional theme present (or) antedated.

The apodosis verb is general theme antedated (or) future theme antedated.

PROTASIS VERB

Paranizi hulsa

Paranızı bulsaydı (bulsa idi)

APODOSIS VERB

onu size verirdi

onu size verecekti.

Each of the sentences means

If he had found your money, he would have given it to you.

(and the speaker indicates his own belief, namely, that X did not find the

money).

# Key to Exercises

# Lesson 2

## Exercise B.

- I. How many kilos of meat?
- 2. a half kilo of coffee
- 3. a little water
- 4. one and one half kilos of sugar
- 5. several times
- 6. several kilos of apples
- 7. two hundred fifty grams of butter
- 8. five cups of tea
- very little lemon very few lemons
- 10. twelve oranges
- 11. three and one half hours
- 12. thirty streets
- 13. two and one half liras
- 14. How many apples?
- 15. How many kurus? how much?
- 16. three and one half apples
- 17. sixty seconds
- 18. sixty minutes
- 19. twenty-four hours
- 20. one day
- 21. seven days
- 22. four weeks
- 23. twelve months
- 24. three hundred and sixty-five days
- 25. one hundred years
- 26. two trees

- 1. varım kilo cay
- 2. üç kilo şeker
- 3. iki yüz gram et
- 4. bir dilim ekmek

- 27. three sons
- 28. How many kilos of sugar?
- 29. one half kilo of sugar
- 30. one hundred times
- 31. How much money?

  How much does it cost?
- 32. a little bit of money; inexpensive
- 33. How many lemons?
- 34. lots of apples (many apples)
- 35. one head
- 36. two hands
- 37. two feet
- 38. two eyes
- 39. very little lemon; very few lemons
- 40. two glasses of water
- 41. little water (not much water)
- 42. a little milk
- 43. very little milk
- 44. ten thousand kilometers
- 45. eight newspapers
- 46. half a glass of water
- 47. seven and one half hours
- 48. two slices of bread
- 49. three spoons of sugar
- 50. three 'breads' (three loaves of bread)
- 5. iki fincan kahve
- 6. sekiz tane elma
- 7. kaç tane ev?
- 8. iki tane minare

- 9. bir cami
- 10. üç yıl
- II. dört gün
- 12. iki hafta
- 13. altı ay
- 14. çok süt
- 15. biraz su
- 16. iki ekmek (iki tane ekmek)
- 17. iki dilim ekmek
- 18. çok az şeker
- 19. çok ağaç
- 20. üç ırmak
- 21. yetmiş yedi göl
- 22. üç şehir
- 23. altmış dört çocuk
- 24. yüz çocuk
- 25. bir göz
- 26. iki göz
- 27. iki ayak
- 28. otuz iki diş
- 29. bir baş

- 30. beş yüz elli beş gün
- 31. on beş yıl
- 32. on iki kız
- 33. on dokuz kere (on dokuz defa)
- 34. on altı bahçe
- 35. otuz beş gece
- 36. otuz altı gün
- 37. elli yedi buçuk gram
- 38. yüz lira
- 39. iki buçuk lira (iki lira elli kuruş)
- 40. iki bin kilovat
- 41. çok cami
- 42. Kaç tane cami?
- 43. bir çok cadde
- 44. çok su
- 45. az su
- 46. Kaç bardak su?
- 47. biraz su
- 48. dört defa (dört kere)
- 49. çok meyva
- 50. çok elma

- 1. a lovely (beautiful) mother
- 2. That mother is pretty.
- 3. (The) child is very tall.
- 4. a very tall child
- 5. a young girl (daughter)
- 6. One girl is young. (One daughter is young.)
- 7. The young girl (daughter) is small.
- 8. This young girl is very little.
- 9. These two women are good.
- 10. twelve good ladies
- 11. This (one) is very small.
- 12. two old women
- 13. (The) two women are aged.
- 14. The two old ladies are short.
- 15. Father is good (well).

- 16. a good father
- 17. (the) two good fathers
- 18. The two fathers are well.
- 19. How many fathers?
- 20. How many days?
- 21. How many apples?
- 22. a nice day
- 23. Today is fine. (This day is good.)
- 24. This is a nice day.
- 25. (the) big car
- 26. two large cars
- 27. (The) two autos are big.
- 28. This is a small car.
- 29. (The) one car's new; the other's old.
- 30. The big car's new.
- 31. The other car's awfully old.

- 32. This (one) is very old.
- 33. This candy's very good. (This sugar is good.)
- 34. a little sugar
- 35. That lake is very large.
- 36. (the) two pretty lakes
- 37. (The) two lakes are charming.
- 38. little money (not much money)
- 39. This (sum of) money is very small.
- 40. a little money

- I. büvük bir avak
- 2. bir büyük ayak
- 3. iki büyük ayak
- 4. Bu ayak büyük.
- 5. Bir ayak büyük, diğer ayak küçük.
- 6. Kaç kadın?
- 7. iki yaşlı kadın
- 8. Bu iki kadın yaşlı.
- 9. İki yaşlı kadın kısa (boylu).
- 10. kısa boylu yaşlı iki kadın
- 11. güzel bir cadde
- 12. iki güzel cadde.
- 13. Bu şehir yeni, diğer şehir eski.

- 41. (the) three cups of coffee
- 42. (the) three coffees
- 43. (the) three coffees
- 44. a good many cups (several cups, a number of cups)
- 45. several cups of tea
- 46. How much money? (How much?)
- 47. 35 liras and 15 kuruş
- 48. (the) five old houses
- 49. (The) five houses are old.
- 50. This (one) is extremely old.
- 14. üç yüksek minare (üç tane yüksek minare)
- 15. bu eski ev
- 16. Bu ev yüksek.
- 17. Eski ev büyük, yeni ev küçük.
- 18. Kaç ev? (Kaç tane ev?)
- 19. Kaç küçük ev? (Kaç tane küçük ev?)
- 20. Kaç ev küçük? (Kaç tane ev küçük?)
- 21. Bu ev çok küçük.
- 22. Çok küçük ev güzel.
- 23. dört genç adam
- 24. Dört adam genç.
- 25. Dört genç adam uzun.

# Lesson 4

- 1. Today is pleasant.
- 2. These days are good.
- 3. These cups are very small.
- 4. How many little cups?
- 5. How many cups are small?
- 6. Some cups are very big.
- 7. Those cups are lovely.
- 8. five cups of good coffee
- 9. This young child is very big.
- 10. This youth is very tall.

- These young children are very small.
- 12. These youths are very short.
- 13. This cup's big.
- 14. This big cup is pretty.
- 15. These cups are beautiful.
- 16. These big cups are pretty.
- 17. The big ones are lovely.
- 18. These big ones are very good.

- 19. This house is small.
- 20. This little house is pretty.
- 21. These little houses are pretty.
- 22. The little ones are very nice.

- 1. bir at
- 2. bir büyük at
- 3. büyük bir at
- 4. büyük atlar
- 5. büyük atlar
- 6. iki büyük at
- 7. bazı büyük atlar
- 8. Bazı atlar büyük.
- 9. Bu büyük at çok iyi.
- 10. Diğer büyük at çok fena.
- 11. İki büyük at güzel.
- 12. Bu atlar küçük.
- 13. Büyükler çok iyi, küçükler fena.
- 14. iki yaşlı kadın

- 23. The little ones are old (but) the big ones are new.
- 24. How many houses are small?
- 25. How many small houses?
- 15. iki yaşlı kadın
- 16. bazı yaşlı kadınlar
- 17. bazı yaşlılar bazı eski şeyler
- 18. Bu kadın yaşlı, diğer kadın genç.
- 19. Eski şeyler küçük. Yaşlılar küçük.
- 20. Gençler güzel.
- 21. Fahrünnisa genç, Ahmet çok yaşlı.
- 22. Bu iyi.
- 23. Bu iyi.
- 24. Küçük evler eski büyük evler yeni.
- 25. Küçükler eski büyükler yeni.

# Lesson 5

## Exercise A.

Note: Each past definite form may, according to the context, normally convey any one of the three English past tenses set forth above (Lesson 5, Section 3). Hence the 'translations' given below by no means convey the whole potential significance of the Turkish verb forms.

- 1. Who came?
- 2. When did you come?
- 3. They've read a lot.
- 4. You haven't read much. (said to one person)
- 5. I understood very little.
- 6. We didn't get (understand) much.
- 7. The youngsters ran a good deal.
- 8. The two children came this morning.
- 9. This coffee's very good.
- I bought a kilo and a half of coffee.
- 11. Who laughed?

- 12. Erdoğan laughed a good deal.
- 13. How many times have you come? (How many times have you been here?)
- Istanbul is a large and beautiful city.
- The Mediterranean is large, (and) the Marmara is small.
- 16. The house is pretty and the yard (garden) is big.
- 17. The young people got here today.
- 18. (The) five youths laughed.
- 19. This child is very young.
- 20. The little girl ran.
- 21. two large eyes

- 22. The two eyes are large.
- 23. This eye is big, (and) that eye is small.
- 24. What's this?
- 25. This is an apple.
- 26. How many liters of milk?
- 27. two and one half cups of milk
- 28. Who are they?
- 29. They are Sait and Ali.
- 30. Who has understood? (Who's got the point?)
- 31. They understood.
- 32. These houses are large.
- 33. These are large.
- 34. The grownups got here this morning.
- 35. The youths have come this evening.

- 1. büyük bir cocuk
- 2. Cocuk büyük.
- 3. dört küçük kız
- 4. Dört kız kücük.
- 5. beş güzel küçük kız
- 6. Bu beş küçük kız güzel.
- 7. üç büyük fena çocuk
- 8. Bu sabah fena bir çocuk geldi.
- 9. Fena çocuk bu sabah geldi.
- 10. Kim geldi?
- 11. Ahmet ne zaman geldi?
- 12. iki kilo portakal
- 13. iki kilo iyi portakal

- 36. The fruit has ripened.
- 37. Ahmet wanted to come.
- 38. Ahmet, when did you come?
- 39. I came this morning.
- 40. The kids read a little.
- 41. What did they want?
- 42. How many cars did you see?
- 43. I saw five automobiles.
- 44. What has happened?
- 45. good children
- 46. When did you come?
- 47. The young folks ran.
- 48. What have you found?
- 49. two good children
- 50. What did they read?
- 14. Bu iki kilo portakal çok iyi.
- 15. Elmalar çok iyi, portakallar fena.
- 16. Süheylâ çok okudu.
- 17. Cok az aldık.
- 18. Bu şehir çok büyük.
- 19. Deniz ve dağlar güzel.
- 20. Cadde büyük, cami küçük.
- 21. Ne zaman geldiler?
- 22. Ahmet kac tane elma istedi?
- 23. Yedi elma istedi.
- 24. Kaç kaşık şeker?
- 25. Kaç dilim ekmek?

# Lesson 6

#### Exercise A.

- Who's taken the money? (Who took the money?)
   Ahmet took the money.
   Ahmet took it.
- 2. Who took the money?
  Ahmet did.
  When did he take it?

He took the money this morning. He took it this morning. He took (it) this morning.

 Mehmet, when did you see Ahmet?
 I saw Ahmet today.
 I saw (him) today.

- Children! Whom did you see today? Today we saw several men.
- 5. Who has seen these two men? We have seen them.
- 6. What did this little girl break? She broke a cup.
- 7. Who broke the cups?
  The little girl broke the cups.
  The little girl broke them.
- 8. When did the girl break the cups? She broke them this morning.
- How many cups did the little girl break?
   She broke two cups.
   She broke two.
- 10. What did the dog see? The dog saw the cat. The cat ran.
- 11. What did the cat want? The cat wanted milk. What did the cat find? The cat found the milk.
- 12. Who took these five glasses?I took them.When did you take the glasses?I took the glasses this evening.

- 1. Dün kitabı okudum.
- 2. Dün iki kitap okudum.
- 3. Bu kitabı kim okudu?
- 4. Dün gittiniz. (Siz dün gittiniz.)
- 5. Hoş geldiniz, Fahrünnisa!

- 13. These mountains are very lovely. They saw the lovely mountains. They saw some lovely mountains.
- 14. Ahmet, when did you come? I came this morning. When did Ahmet come? He came this morning.
- 15. Mehmet and Sait came yesterday. Who came yesterday? Yesterday they came.
- 16. Who understood him?
  I understood him.
- 17. You are late, Ahmet! Yes, I am very late.
- 18. Istanbul is a large city. Who has seen Istanbul? We have seen it.
- 19. Those youngsters are very small. When did they go? The little ones went this morning.
- 20. Welcome, Ahmet! Come right in! Thanks, Mehmet! I'm glad to be here.
  - 6. Hoş bulduk, Selma.
  - 7. Mehmet biraz para istedi.
  - 8. Mehmet kaç para istedi?
  - 9. Parayı kim istedi?
- 10. İki lirayı buldum.

# Lesson 7

- I. Ahmet's got the car. (Ahmet took the car.)
- 2. It's Ahmet who's got the car. (Ahmet took the car.)
- 3. Who saw me? (Who's seen me?)
- 4. They wanted you. (They asked for you.)
- 5. I read that book (way over there) but you read this one.
- 6. We've seen the big mosque.
- 7. Whom did they ask for? (Whom did they want?)
- 8. Look, Mehmet, look! Ahmet's come.

- 9. Please take this fruit.
- 10. Drink the coffee!
- II. Come here, Mehmet! Ahmet has smashed something!
- 12. Understanding this is very hard.
- 13. How many times did you see us?
- 14. When did they get here?
- 15. Find them.

- I. Onu bul! Bul!
- 2. Gül!
- 3. Beni gördü ve ben onu gördüm.
- 4. Gelsinler!
- 5. Bunlar büyük.
- 6. İzmiri ve Eskisehir'i gördüm.
- 7. Büyükler bunlar.
- 8. Çocuk dün geldi.

- 16. You knew it yesterday.
- 17. Who asked for such a thing? (Who wanted something like this?)
- 18. I went, I saw (it), I came (back).
- 19. Please read this book today.
- 20. If only they'd come quickly! (I wish they would hurry!)
- 9. Bu hafta gittiler.
- 10. Bu ay çok güzel.
- 11. On beş lira otuz beş kuruş istedi.
- 12. On beş lirayı dün aldım.
- 13. İki büyük halı aldılar.
- 14. Bu çok güç.
- 15. Bunlar çok kolay. Bu şeyler çok kolay.

# Lesson 8

- How many people came from Ankara yesterday morning?
   Five people came.
   Where did they come from?
   From Ankara.
   Ahmet and Mehmet came too.
   Yes, they came too.
- These rugs are very lovely, Ali.
  Yes, (they are) very lovely.
  Where did you find them?
  I found them in Istanbul.
  Where?
  In the Kapalıçarşı.
  How much did you get them for?
  I gave 500 liras for the big rug.
- 3. On Tuesday Ahmet Bey came to Istanbul. He went to the Covered Bazaar. There he saw many things. He bought two pretty rugs. Later, he went to Taksim. That night he stayed in a hotel at Taksim. Wednesday morning at eight he went back to Ankara from Istanbul.
- 4. The girl went to Izmir yesterday.
- 5. Where did she come from?

- 6. She came from Ankara.
- 7. Where did you see Ahmet?
- 8. Where is the dog?
- 9. I saw the dog in the garden.
- 10. One day a cat saw a dog. The dog saw the cat. The cat stared and stared at the dog. Suddenly the cat ran out of the garden. He ran away quickly. The dog returned home from the garden.
- II. From whom did they take (receive) the money?
- They took the money from Mehmet.
- 13. How much money did they take?
- 14. To whom did Ahmet give the fifteen liras?
- 15. He gave the money to them.
- 16. Who drank the milk?
- 17. What did you drink?
- 18. Mother and Father talked about Ahmet.
- 19. You came very late.
- 20. Yes, we have come very late.

- 1. Ben de o kitabı istedim.
- 2. Ahmet Pazar günü döndü.
- 3. İzmirde kimi gördüler?
- 4. Kaç kilo peynir istedi?
- 5. İki yüz elli gram peynir istedi.
- 6. Bu peynir çok iyi.
- 7. Dün nereye gittiler?
- 8. Bu sabah nereden geldiniz?

- 9. Çocuklara kim baktı?
- 10. Dün Selma onlara baktı.
- 11. Ağaçta neyi gördün, Erdoğan?
- 12. Ağaçta kediyi gördüm, baba.
- 13. Kutuda ne buldun, Erdoğan?
- 14. Kutuda on lira buldum.
- 15. Şekeri fincandan kim aldı?

# Lesson 9

- I. Ahmet! Didn't you go to school today?
- 2. No, Father. I didn't go to school today.
- 3. Did you go to the city?
- 4. No, Father. Today I didn't go either to school or to the city.
- 5. In that case, where did you go? What did you do?
- 6. I saw a garden. I went into the garden.
- 7. Which garden did you go into?
- 8. I didn't go to the big garden. I went into the small garden.
- 9. Have you been to Izmir? How long did you stay there? I stayed there two, two and a half months.
- 10. Ahmet, be a good boy! Go to school. Go every day. Work very hard. Have you understood (me), or not? I have understood, Father.
- 11. Have you ever been to Ankara? No, I've never gone there. I've certainly wanted to, but I've not gone. I haven't even been to Bursa. I've just seen one city—Istanbul. Have you been to Ankara? Yes, I've gone there lots. I've been to Izmir. I've gone also to Adana.
- 12. How many times have you been to Adana? To Adana? I've gone there five (or) six times. In short, you've traveled a lot. Yes, I have traveled a lot.
- 13. What did you think of Ankara? Is it pretty? Yes, Ankara is pretty. And Istanbul? Istanbul? It's pretty, too, very lovely.
- I4. Where did you come from today?
  Today I came from Adana.
  What day did you go (had you gone) there?
  I went there Saturday.
  What did you think of Adana?
  (It's) very big and very lovely. But it's hot!

15. Did they ask you for money, or not?
They did. They wanted 275 liras.
Did you give them the 275 liras, or not?
I wanted not to, but I did. Yesterday Ahmet gave (had given) me 300 liras.
Today I gave them the 275 liras.

## Exercise B.

- I. Ahmet gitti mi?
- 2. Ahmet mi gitti?
- 3. Kitabı size verdiler mi? Hayır, vermediler.
- 4. Selma iki çocuğu gördü mü? Evet, gördü.
- 5. Niçin parayı bize vermediniz? İstemediniz mi?
- 6. Dün parayı Erdoğana verdim. Onu görmediniz mi?
- 7. Gelsinler mi, gelmesinler mi?
- 8. Ahmet niçin gelmesin?
- 9. Ne çay içti ne kahve.
- 10. Fahrünnisa hiç bir şey içmedi.
- 11. Hic Ankaraya gittiler mi?
- 12. Hiç Ankaraya gittiniz mi?
- 13. İzmirden geldiler mi?
- 14. Hayır, oradan gelmediler. Adanadan geldiler.
- 15. Gazeteyi babaya verdiniz mi?
- 16. Evet, onu (ona) verdim.
- 17. Odada ne buldunuz?
- 18. Orada hic bir sev bulmadım.
- 19. O kutuya ne peyniri koysun ne şekeri.
- 20. Ahmet gazeteyi okusun mu, okumasın mı?

# Lesson 10

#### Exercise A.

#### (Simple possessive constructions)

- I. Ahmet's mother is very young.
- 2. Where's your house?
- 3. The child's father came.
- 4. Who's your father?
- 5. The city's water is quite good.
- 6. If only their father would come here!
- 7. It is to be hoped that their fathers won't go there!
- 8. Is this your book?
- 9. The rug owner took the money.

- 10. Whose apple is this?
- 11. The Turkish alphabet is easy.
- 12. Is Turkish difficult?
- 13. Is your garden pretty big?
- 14. Ankara Boulevard is lovely.
- 15. How lovely Ankara's boulevards are!
- 16. Is your bedroom small?
- 17. Our classroom is hot.
- 18. Does that woman own a car?
- 19. Where's the landlord?
- 20. Who owns this house?
- 21. My own book is in the house.
- 22. The landlord hasn't asked for the money.
- 23. They came Tuesday.
- 24. Where are the teacups? (or) Where are her/their teacups?
- 25. This textbook is very large.

## Possessive complexes, etc.

- 1. Your father's eyes are handsome.
- 2. The trees of our city are very large.
- 3. Ahmet's two sons came.
- 4. Let the little child's mother come quickly!
- 5. The landlord's radio is a very good one.
- 6. Where's your landlord?
- 7. The house of your friend's mother is large.
- 8. We hope that our daughter's friends won't come here today.
- 9. Whose father's house is this?
- 10. What is your son's name?
- 11. Didn't they know their landlord's name?
- 12. Who should look after Ahmet's children?
- 13. I came through Beyoglu's streets.
- 14. I put neither her books nor my own books into my sister's bedroom.
- 15. Didn't they take my books?
- 16. Don't give your father's money to the mother of those children!
- 17. Whom did you see at the Ankara kindergarten?
- 18. Haven't you seen my boy and Ahmet's two girls?
- 19. They took one book from my son.
- 20. It went from the Dardanelles to the Bosporus.
- 21. When did they go to Beyoglu?
- 22. Have you ever seen the Taurus Mountains?
- 23. He didn't want his friend's book.
- 24. He wanted his own book.
- 25. Don't come to my house! Go to your friend's house!

- 1. Ders odamızda kimi buldunuz?
- 2. Ahmedin annesi çocukların yatak odasına girdi.
- 3. Kardeşimin ev sahibi otomobilini babamın garajına koydu.
- 4. Otomobil Beyoğlundan İstanbul Üniversitesine gitti.
- 5. Vapur Çanakkale Boğazından geçti.
- 6. Küçük kızkardeşinizin çay fincanları güzel.
- 7. Ev sahibimin kendi evi İstanbul Caddesinde.
- 8. Oğlunuzun ayakları büyük.
- 9. Küçük kardeşinizin ismi ne?
- 10. Ahmedin kızkardeşi dün gece niçin kızkardeşlerinizin evine gitmedi?
- 11. Hiç Beyoğluna gittiniz mi?
- 12. Ahmet Karadenizi hiç görmedi, fakat Marmara Denizini gördü.
- 13. Annemin parasını Mehmedin ve Erdoğanın kızkardeşlerine verdiler.
- 14. Küçük ders odasından çıktı, büyük ders odasına girdi.
- 15. İstanbul şehri çok eski. Ankara şehri yeni.
- 16. Yeni Türk alfabesi kolay.
- 17. Oraya hiç gitmeyin.
- 18. Boğaziçi çok güzel. Çanakkale Boğazı da güzel.
- 19. Hiç Çanakkale Boğazını gördünüz mü?
- 20. Dün Çanakkale Boğazına gitmediniz mi?
- 21. Otomobil Beyoğlu caddelerinden geçti. Karaköyden geçmedi.
- 22. Babasının evi Afyonkarahisar'da.
- 23. Bu adam otomobil sahibi mi?
- 24. Büyük otomobilin sahibi, o evin sahibinin kardeşine on lira verdi.
- 25. Arkadaşımın babasının otomobilinden kimen kitaylarını aldın?

# Lesson 11

- Sir, we are very eager for you to come to our home. We await you sir; we anticipate (it).
- 2. To go to New York takes a lot of money.
- 3. What a pity for Selma to break all of Fahrünnisa's coffee cups!
- 4. Father, I intend to go to the movies. Ahmet, have you studied your schoolbook? Is your lesson ready? I've studied hard, Father. I have read (it) twice. What do you say, Selma? Ought the boy to go to the movies tonight, or not? Certainly, Mehmet, let him go. Why shouldn't he go? All right, let him go. On your way now, Ahmet! But don't stay out late! Thanks, Father. And I thank you, too, Mother. I'll not be late.

- 5. What's the meaning of this, Ahmet? You've only got a six in your Turkish. What's happened? Didn't you work? Work hard! For that matter, it's always necessary to work in life. Have you understood or not?

  I have understood. Father. I'll work. I'll really work.
- 6. Will you have a (cup of) tea, sir? Thank you, no. I never drink tea. In that case, may it not be a (cup of) coffee, sir? I thank you, madam. Would you please give me a cup of coffee?
- 7. Ahmet Bey preferred to drink coffee rather than tea.
- 8. Ahmet read his textbook without getting the sense of a single word.
- 9. We hope you have (a) good trip, Ahmet Bey! Bon voyage! (May your road be open!)
- Mehmet comes to our house each morning. It would be fine if his older brother Erdoğan would come, too.
- II. We pay the ticketsellers on the buses; they hand us our tickets.
- 12. Each morning Ahmet Bey eats breakfast, reads the paper, and goes to his office.
- Each morning Selma Hanım eats breakfast, cares for the house, and goes to market.
- 14. Ahmet Bey eats his lunch in a restaurant.
- 15. Do you drink tea?
- 16. No, sir. I never drink tea.
- 17. Selim Bey knows French well. He studied French at Istanbul University for three and one half years.
- 18. Has Ahmet come or not?
- 19. He hasn't come yet. But, he will come, sir. He will come.
- 20. This train leaves the station at eight o'clock.

- I. Selma bir bardak süt içer mi?
- Teşekkür ederiz, hanımefendi. Selma hiç süt içmez. Lûtfen, ona bir bardak su verir misiniz?
- 3. Selma, süt içmektense su içmeyi tercih eder.
- 4. Dün sabah Kapalıçarşıda Ahmet Bey iki güzel halı gördü.
- 5. İkisini de almak istedi.
- 6. Halı sahibi küçüğe iki bin lira, buyüğe beş bin lira istedi.
- 7. Ahmet Bey, 'O çok pahalı. İkisine dört bin beş yüz lira veririm,' dedi.
- 8. Adam, hiç beklemeden, 'Hayır. Ben ikisine yedi bin lira isterim,' dedi.
- 9. Neticede, Ahmet Bey Kapalıçarşıdan, halıları almadan çıktı.
- 10. O eve döner dönmez, eşi, 'Halı aldın mı?' dedi.
- 'Hayır, almadım. Halı sahibi iki güzel halıya yedi bin lira istedi. Çarşıdan halıları almadan çıktım,' dedi.
- 12. Eşi, 'Çok fena!' dedi.
- 13. Ahmet Bey, 'Ya yazık,' dedi, 'fakat o yedi bin lira istedi. Çok pahalı buldum.'
- 14. Eşi, 'Amma ben yeni halı isterim,' dedi.
- 15. Ahmet Bey, 'Evet şekerim,' dedi. 'Güzel bir halı bulmaya çalışırım.'

## Exercise A.

- 1. My house is bigger than your house.
- Will it be (a) good (thing) for Sait to come from America? Sait hasn't come from America yet. He will come in the month of June.
- 3. In that year we used to go to Ankara once a month.
- 4. Will you please give me the salt?
- 5. What do you say, sir; shall we go there or not?
- 6. Have they come to you (your house)? Yes, sir, they have come twice. Twice? In that case they'll come to our house, too. They certainly will.
- 7. Didn't you go to the Ahmet Beys'? I didn't. In fact, I never go there.
- 8. As soon as I opened the newspaper, this was what I saw.
- 9. The two youngsters started to run.
- 10. The girl's hair is jet black.
- 11. Reading lots of books is (a) good (thing).
- 12. The little girl's reading is good.
- 13. Who wrote these (writings)?I did.My boy, don't write like this! One must write better!
- 14. To whom do the best apples belong?
- 15. Are these yours?
- 16. My father gets up at 7:00, eats breakfast, reads the paper, gets into the car at 8:30, and goes to his office.
- 17. Doesn't he want to study?
  Not at all.
- 18. Aren't you going to go today?
- 19. No, but I'll go tomorrow.
- 20. To whom will you give these?
- 21. Ahmet won't go to Italy without having given me the money.
- 22. In your opinion, does (will, would) Ahmet take my money?
- 23. Shall Ahmet go to your mother's house tomorrow, or not?
- 24. They didn't come yesterday but they will come tomorrow.
- 25. Will you or will you not give us the money?

- I. Niye Beyoğluna gitmiyeceksin?
- 2. Selmanın babası otomobilini kimden satın aldı?
- 3. Onu hangi garaja koyacak?
- 4. Hangi sinemaya gidecekler?
- 5. Mehmet hiç sinemaya gitmez.

- 6. Sinemaya haftada iki defa giderdik.
- 7. Bence, oğlunuzun bu kitabı okumaması fena(dır).
- 8. Onlar günlerce aradılar, fakat köpeği bulmadılar.
- 9. Kimi bekledin?
- 10. Seni yarın evimde bekliyeceğim.
- 11. Ankaraya gelir gelmez Mehmet Beye telefon ettim.
- 12. O, kitapları size vermeden Ankaraya gitmiyecek.
- 13. Köpeğim Selmanın köpeğinden (daha) büyük(tür).
- 14. Onun köpeği bembeyaz fakat benim köpeğim simsiyah.
- 15. Yavaş gidiniz!
- 16. İyi anlamadım.
- 17. En küçük kız en büyük elmayı yedi.
- 18. Ahmet gelecek mi, gelmiyecek mi?
- 19. Ahmedin fikrince Selma gelsin mi, gelmesin mi?
- 20. Niçin daha çok çalışmazsınız?

## Exercise A.

- 1. Who passed behind us?
- 2. Won't they pass in front of us?
- 3. Who came after you (did)? Who came behind you?
- 4. Because of you, your brother also came late.
- 5. Why didn't you give me an apple like this one?
- 6. What did you find in the box?
- 7. He took the newspaper from his pocket.
- 8. His house is on the mountain's top.
- 9. The dog knows his master's voice.
- 10. They brought tea for me.
- II. Why did they come before eight o'clock?
- 12. The child wrote with his father's pencil.
- 13. Why did you work?
- 14. We strove in order to understand, and to learn.
- 15. I have never read a book like this.

- I. Ahmet cebine ne koydu?
- 2. Selma cay fincanlarını nerede buldu?
- 3. Kutuda bir fincan buldu, diğerlerini arkasında buldu.
- 4. Kitabımı kim aldı?
- 5. Ahmet aldı.
- 6. Nereye koydu?

- 7. Ağacın yanına koydu.
- 8. Nilüfer nerede?
- 9. Sinemaya gitti.
- 10. Yalnız mı gitti?
- 11. Hayır.
- 12. Kiminle gitti?
- 13. Ahmedin kızkardeşiyle gitti.
- 14. Geç kalacaklar mı?
- 15. Hayır, buraya saat dokuz buçuktan evvel gelecekler.

## Exercise A.

- I. Where's your car, Ahmet Bey?
- 2. I don't have a car, sir. I used to (I did have one), but I've sold it.
- 3. Was your car good, Ahmet Bey?
- 4. It wasn't good. It was very old. That's why I sold it.
- 5. Where's little Selma, Mihri Hanım?
- 6. She's not here. I haven't seen Selma today.
- 7. But she'll come here today, won't she?
- 8. Yes, Mihri Hanım, I hope she's going to come.
- 9. Who was at your house yesterday afternoon?
- 10. Mehmet was (there). Ahmet was (there). A few friends came in. We sat (around and) talked. That's all...
- 11. You have two sisters, don't you?
- 12. No, I have only one sister, but my husband has two sisters.
- 13. Are there apples in Turkey?
- 14. Yes, in fact there are lots of apples.
- 15. You have two apple trees in your yard, don't you?

- 1. Kimin kitabı bu? Bu kitap kimin(dir)?
- 2. Kimin kitabı yok(tur)?
- 3. Bunlar sizin, değil mi?
- 4. Bunlar sizin değil(dir), değil mi?
- 5. (Onun) dört kızkardeşi vardı, değil mi?
- 6. Senin kitabın evimde(dir).
- 7. Evlerinde kitap yok.
- 8. Ahmedin babasının iki otomobili var(dır).
- 9. Babanızın otomobili yoktu, değil mi?
- 10. Ahmet orada mı(dır)?

#### Exercise A

- 1. Is your brother's bedroom upstairs or downstairs?
- 2. Have you seen our sister?
- 3. Who took the money from under the box?
- Ahmet [the narrator says] came here yesterday morning, said this and said that, then took my sister's money and departed.
- 5. According to Ahmet, they don't come here.
- 6. We found two places in the front of the streetcar.
- 7. My boy, don't go indoors today!
- 8. Had he not gone to Istanbul before 1937?
- 9. The water came up to his mouth.
- 10. According to you, my sister did not get into Ahmet's car.
- 11. What else did they want? (Apart from that, what . . .)
- 12. Why won't they come?
- 13. They won't be particularly anxious to come here.
- 14. What did he put into the teacups?
- 15. The train staved five minutes in the station.
- 16. You haven't gone to Turkey for a long time.
- 17. Does your house have a garden?
- 18. The youngsters started on a trip five days ago.
- 19. Is this house for sale or rent?
- 20. Istanbul has many daily newspapers.
- 21. Despite the fact that I am poor, I won't take money from that man!
- 22. Ahmet and Erdoğan (apparently) worked hard in order to go to Istanbul.
- 23. Do you want to keep the big box? (Should it stay with you . . .?)
  Yes, let it stay (here) for a week or so.
- 24. Don't cross in front of the train!
- 25. Children, please don't open the outside door!

- Mehmet! Ahmet İstanbula gitti mi?
   Onu görmedim. Fakat her halde gitmiştir.
   Erdoğan! Siz Ahmedi gördünüz mü?
   Gördüm, efendim. İstanbula gitmedi. Edirneye gitti.
- 2. Kahveniz şekerli mi olsun, şekersiz mi (olsun)?
- 3. Ben limonlu cav severim.
- 4. Bu sütlü kahve cok iyidir.
- 5. Ahmedin kardeşi 1955 senesinden evvel ölmüş müydü?
- 6. 1949 senesinde iki evim vardı. Şimdi üç tane var.

- 7. O zaman evli değildiniz, değil mi?
- 8. Babam daima iyilik, doğruluk ve güzellik istedi.
- 9. Ahmede göre gitmemiş.
- 10. Ahmede göre gitmemiş idi.

## Exercise A.

- I. What is the name of the newcomer?
- 2. They didn't tell me that Ahmet had come (came) yesterday.
- 3. We hoped that you would find your money.
- 4. What is the name of the man to whom you rented your house?
- 5. Which (one) of these did they want?
- 6. Those who know this well are few. (Not many people know this well.)
- 7. How many persons want to go to Beyoğlu?
- 8. Didn't you see who came?
- The teacher told us that our children work (have worked) hard in their lessons (classes).
- 10. Because Ahmet didn't (hasn't) come here, my father wrote me a letter.
- II. Of the cities you've seen, which one is the most lovely?
- 12. Didn't you see the car of the man who came yesterday, out in front of my house?
- 13. Has the woman whose house you bought gone to France?
- 14. Although they came here a number of times, we didn't give them anything.
- 15. Did he say who it was who bought the best apples?
- 16. This sort of a thing doesn't happen once in a hundred years.
- 17. Whom did you see at the door? Apparently somebody came a half an hour ago, sir.
- 18. Those who are going to board the train should wait here.
- 19. He said for the people who are going to get on the train to wait here.
- 20. The mother of the girl who found Ahmet's money gave the money to me.

- 1. Bu elmalardan en büyüğünü istiyen kimdir?
- 2. Evinizi sattığınız kadının ismi nedir?
- 3. Evini satın aldığınız adam nerede oturdu?
- 4. İçine sütü koyduğum fincanı kim kırdı?
- 5. Ahmet kimin geldiğini görmedi.
- 6. Ahmet kimin geldiğini görmediğini söyledi.
- 7. Ahmet kimin geleceğini bana sordu.
- 8. Size telefon ettikten sonra evden cıktım.
- 9. Türkçeyi iyi bildiğinizden dolayı onlara bir mektup yazar mısınız, lûtfen?
- 10. Onlara bir mektup yazacağını söyledi.

### Exercise A.

- 1. Even though you didn't come, Ahmet won't ask for the money, will he?
- 2. You'll find the watch inside the iron box.
- 3. I'll get the key from the doorkeeper, won't I?
- 4. Don't you have a car?
- 5. They didn't know that Fahrünnisa was coming that day, did they?
- 6. Which one (of them) did he want?
- 7. These aren't his.
- 8. He said that its color was snow white.
- 9. It's clear that he wanted the prettiest one of these.
- 10. The day Selma came here she gave Fahrünnisa two kilos of coffee.
- 11. Mine are better than yours.
- 12. Won't you say where you put the book you read?
- 13. What I read (was reading) wasn't a book. I read a weekly magazine.
- 14. That fellow seems to have a lot of money. His father is wealthy, too.
- 15. Although his father is rich, Ahmet doesn't seem to have very much money.
- 16. After you have come here, you'll learn the language very quickly.
- 17. The name of the daughter of the man to whom I sold my car is Selma.
- 18. The minute I saw it (her, him), Ahmet arrived.
- 19. Which (ones) of the books in your house should they (ought they to) take?
- 20. How much money did he ask for this tiny rug?
- 21. Where's the entrance?
- 22. According to what Erdoğan says (said), their house is (should be) very nice.
- 23. This is not a matter which will happen in this fashion.
- 24. Don't you say, "I won't read the book Ahmet gave me!"
- 25. Mehmet had not read the book that Ahmet gave him.
- 26. How much does this house rent for?

This house isn't for rent.

Sir, in the entire city isn't there a house for rent?

There are very few, but you'll find two of them over across from the mosque.

In your view, which of them is the better?

- As I see it, the little one (of them) is the better.
- 27. They didn't like the water they drank.
- 28. How was the movie? Did you enjoy it?
- 29. Who are those people with them?
- 30. They seem not to be natives (or residents) of Istanbul; they're from Antalya.
- 31. She's not a woman who'll talk in such a fashion.
- 32. Old houses have two parts: one of them is the *selâmlık*, i.e., the men's section; the other part is the *harem*, i.e., the part for the women.

- 33. I've not been to the movies since I was a child.
- 34. (All right) let them say, 'If only he would come! If only he would come!' I'm not going to go.
- 35. They'll say that there's no news of him.

- I. Anneciğim, buraya gelin, lûtfen!
- 2. Bahçemdeki elma ağaçları bahçenizdekilerden daha büyüktür.
- 3. Fotografçılar hep beraber Ankaraya gittiler.
- 4. Bu binanın üç (tane) çıkışı vardır.
- 5. Selma, babasının yeni bir otomobil satın alacağını bana söyledi.
- 6. Mehmet gelmediği için Ahmedin de gelmiyeceğini ümit ederim.
- 7. Babanızın yazıcısı yok mudur?
- 8. Dün gece gördüğümüz filmi beğenmedim.
- 9. Hava çok fena olduğundan onları görmeye gitmiyeceğiz.
- 10. Yatak odasındakine kaç para istedi?

# Lesson 18

- 1. We're going to the movies, Hasan Bey. Won't you come along, too?
- 2. What theater are you going to?
- We're going to the Crystal. A very good film is playing. Come on! You'll have a great time.
- To tell the truth (the truth of it is), Mehmet Bey, I don't particularly like movies.
   In addition, I've got a lot of work.
- That's too bad, Hasan Bey. In that case, you take care of (do) your work. We'll be on our way. Good-bye.
- Good-bye, sir. I hope the film is good. Perhaps next week I, too, will see that picture.
- Hasan Bey was just about to go to the movies, but because he had a lot of work he changed his mind and didn't go.
- 8. Do you know the name of the girl whose father is in Paris?
- 9. I do. Her name is Selma.
- 10. While her father is staying in Paris, where will Selma live?
- 11. At present she is staying with us. Next month, when her father has come back from France, she'll live with him in their own house.
- 12. The children left the school two by two.
- 13. We all gave twenty liras apiece.
- 14. Mihri says that Mehmet is going to come tomorrow.
- 15. Do you really believe that he's coming?

- Bu akşam babam evde çalışıyor. Onun için otomobilin anahtarını bana vereceğini ümit ediyorum.
- 2. Ne yapıyorsunuz?
- 3. Kızkardeşime bir mektup yazıyorum.
- 4. Ankaradaki kızkardeşinize mi İzmirdekine mi yazıyorsunuz?
- 5. İzmirdekine.
- 6. Ben Bursaya gitmek üzereydim, fakat babam parayı bana vermedi.
- 7. Mehmet, Ahmet kitabını aldı diye, Ahmedin babasına telefon etti.
- 8. Sait, Ahmet yarın gelecek diye yazıyor.
- 9. Ben eve gidiyorum. Allaha ısmarladık, Mehmet.
- 10. Güle güle, Ahmet.

# Lesson 19

## Exercise A.

- I. Won't the car go faster? It can't go any faster.
- 2. You can go there after you have received your passport.
- 3. Do you know who owns the car out there on the street?
- 4. We hope that you'll be able to go tomorrow.
- 5. (aboard a streetcar)

Move up towards the front, gentlemen. There's lots of empty space there. Is there anyone who wants to get off here? Is there anyone who is going to get off at Galatasaray?

6. (on the telephone)

Hello, hello! What number do I have, sir?

This is the Ihsan Company, sir.

Is Ahmet Bey there?

Which Ahmet Bey do you want, sir?

Mr. Ahmet Mehmedoğlu.

No, sir. He doesn't seem to be here. He must have gone out. He was here half an hour ago.

Who are you, sir?

I (am) Erdoğan Yılmaz.

Erdoğan Bey! Is that you?

It's me, sir. And you?

I (am) Sait from Ankara. I got here today.

My goodness, Sait Bey. Welcome!

Thank you, my good friend Erdoğan. How are you? Are you in good shape? I certainly hope you're fine.

Thanks, Sait. I'm very well. And you, how are you?

Thank you, too. What's new, Erdoğan?

Well, Erdoğan Bey. I've got an appointment. Good-bye. Will you please tell

Ahmet Bey that I'll phone him again tomorrow?

Sure, Sait Bey! I'll tell (him). Good-bye, sir!

- 7. The old woman sat weeping bitterly.
- 8. This is the smallest of my children's friends.
- 9. To hear them tell it, you're alleged to have gone there a couple of times.
- 10. The biggest of the cities you'll see in Turkey is Istanbul.
- II. Ahmet wrote that he bought two nice rugs.
- 12. Is it so that you've got two big trees out behind your house?
- 13. Ahmet! Take this money, run fast down to the tobacconist('s store, and) quickly buy two newspapers!
- 14. Do you know the name of the individual who purchased the newspapers?
- 15. I do not believe that there is a more beautiful mountain in all the world.
- 16. What is this fellow's job? Is he a newsman or is he a teacher?
- 17. We hope that Süheylâ's sister will stay with us for two or three nights.
- 18. Why didn't you come, Ahmet?
- 19. You'll be able to get here every morning at 9:30, won't you?
- 20. I don't believe that you'll be able to get here every morning.

- 1. Ahmet, 'Kitabımı bulamıyorum,' dedi.
- 2. Ahmet kendi kitabını bulamadığını söyledi.
- 3. İnşallah, bana haftada bir yazabileceksiniz.
- 4. Nicin binaya giremediniz?
- 5. Yarın Ankaraya gidebilecek misiniz?
- 6. Girebilir miyim?
- 7. Bunu iyi okuyabileceğinizi biliyorum.
- 8. Onların niçin gelemediklerini biliyor musunuz?
- 9. Ahmedin otomobilin anahtarını bulamıyacağı bellidir.
- 10. Bütün okuduğum kitaplardan en iyisinin bu olduğunu söyliyebilirim.

# Lesson 20

- 1. Why didn't you eat?
- 2. What do you say, sir? Should I go there today, or not?
- 3. No matter who comes, I'll give this book only to Ahmet Bey.
- 4. Must you really go in (after) one hour?
- If you'll just glance (look once thus) at the watch in your hand, you'll see that it's nine thirty.
- 6. I am afraid that no one can come here tomorrow.
- 7. They weren't obliged to come here immediately.
- 8. Do you know why she couldn't phone?
- 9. It doesn't snow in our city.
- 10. Erdoğan's wife said that her mother had been sick for two months but had then gone back to Ankara.

- 11. Say what you will, I saw with my own eyes that they were ready to go.
- 12. If he doesn't give you back the watch he took out of your big chest, you'll have to (you'll remain in the necessity to) tell his mother the truth (about it), won't you?
- 13. Let her do what she wants. (Let her do it the way she wants.)
- 14. Hey, kids! Time's going fast. Come, let's go!
- 15. Sir, with your permission may I take a small bit of bread?
- 16. My son preferred to go to the movies rather than go to school.
- 17. You don't know where the bookshop Ahmet described to us yesterday is, do you?
- 18. They didn't say that he hadn't gone, did they?
- 19. They couldn't say that he wouldn't go, could they?
- 20. Don't you know that he can't come?

- 1. Size bir fincan çay vereyim mi, efendim?
- 2. Ben gitmezsem siz de gitmiyecek misiniz?
- 3. Neden bahsedelim?
- 4. Hakikaten gitmeli miydiniz?
- 5. Hakikaten gitmeli misiniz?
- 6. Siz ne dersiniz? Biz gidelim mi, gitmeyelim mi?
- 7. O gelirse kitabı ona vereceğiz.
- 8. Onlar ise gidemediler.
- 9. 'Teşekkür ederim, efendim,' deyin.
- 10. Paravı bize vermek mecburivetinde değildi.

# Lesson 21

- I. Was the teacup broken?
- 2. As I view it, that is something which really can't be known.
- 3. The books written by that man are hard to come by nowadays.
- 4. Ahmet was in Beyoğlu yesterday.
- 5. Was the cup broken by you?
- 6. The news was officially announced by the government.
- 7. They sat me down on a chair and wouldn't let me go.
- 8. I have to go, sir. In fact, I'm late. Good-bye for now. Good-bye, Mehmet Bey. I hope we'll get together again.
- The big box wouldn't go through the door. Therefore it was let down from the window.
- It can't be said that that man never came (comes) to our house. He has come a few times.

- We talked about Ahmet for two hours. Then we reached a decision. Everything was agreed upon.
- 12. No matter what they say, we won't let (give permission to) you (to) go there.
- 13. Permit me to assist you, Sir!
- 14. I want two third-class tickets, please.
- 15. Have you forgotton what you yourself said?
- 16. By whom was this house built?
- 17. Didn't you ask them where they'd put the money?
- 18. Don't ask me that!
- 19. They washed in the sea.
- 20. If I have to go to Izmir Friday, I don't know what I'll do.
- 21. These new factories are being developed.
- 22. According to what is being said, he will never come back from Istanbul.
- 23. If you don't work, you won't be able to learn.
- 24. Who is teaching you Turkish?
- Instead of the word talebe in old Turkish, today the word öğrenci is more frequently used.

- 1. Bu su içilmez.
- 2. Gelecek hafta Adanada buluşuruz. Anlaşıldı.
- 3. Bu tütün Türkiyeden getirilir.
- 4. Ahmet tütünü Mehmede getirtti.
- 5. Bu yoldan İzmir'e gidilmez.
- 6. Yol genişlettiriliyor.
- 7. Oğlum, çabuk giyin!
- 8. Bu haber hükümetce bildirildi.
- 9. Dikkat ediniz! O kırılır.
- 10. Onun elyazısı okunmaz.

# Lesson 22

- 1. You don't know whether Ahmet Bey will go to the movies with us tomorrow, do you?
- While I was in Beyoğlu, some thief entered my house, silenced my dog, and took two good rugs and 500 liras.
- Because they couldn't keep the children quiet, the teachers wrote letters of complaint to each of their fathers.
- 4. Goodness, Erdoğan Bey! How your son has grown! I can't believe my eyes.
- 5. Because we don't know which of your friends will be able to come, we still haven't decided which restaurant to eat in.

- I can't exactly remember how many months it has been since Süheylâ Hanım took sick.
- They had known for a long time that I couldn't come that day.
   Therefore I just somehow can't understand why they didn't remind you of it.
- 8. When the girl saw her father she began both to run and to weep.
- 9. If I have to stay more than two weeks in Istanbul, I'll not be able to meet with you in Ankara.
- 10. Since I wasn't sure whether your mother knew you had been in Ankara that week, I didn't show either her or your father the snapshot that I took there.
- 11. If they decide not to go there but to stay here, I'm sure they'll ask me for the books which I had promised would be sent to you.
- 12. Is it better for you to live in Istanbul than in Ankara?
- 13. As is known, one can't get into the library on holidays.
- 14. When the door was opened, the children ran to their places and sat down.
- 15. If they aren't made to unite, they'll not be able to do what they want to do.
- 16. The doctor would go to his office each day and receive his patients.
- 17. If you don't go, what will happen?
- 18. Although I've never gone there, they write me a letter every week and say that they are always expecting me.
- 19. Because the weather was bad we did not go swimming.
- 20. Have you forgotten that seeing is believing?

- 1. Kapıyı açarak otomobiline binip gitti.
- 2. Dünyanın küçüldüğünü unutmayınız.
- 3. Ahmedin bu kitabı okuyup okumadığını biliyor musunuz?
- 4. Çok çalışarak Türkçeyi iyi öğrendi.
- 5. Fiyatlar gittikçe yükseldi.
- 6. Giderken bana bir lira verdi.
- 7. Oraya gidip ona biraz para verirsek çok iyi olur.
- 8. Oraya gitmeyip burada kalmak istediler.
- 9. Oraya gitmemeye ve burada kalmaya karar verdiler.
- 10. Onların oraya gitmemeye ve burada kalmaya karar verdiklerini söylüyor.

# Vocabulary

açık open açılmak (açılır) to be opened açmak (açar) to open (trans.) adam man afyon poppy, opium ağabeyi elder brother ağaç (ağacı) tree ağız (ağzi) mouth ağlamak (ağlar) to weep Ağustos August Ahmet (Ahmedi) man's name ak white akmak (akar) to run, flow akşam evening akşam yemeği evening meal alcak low alfabe alphabet alışmak (alışır) to be or become accustomed to (with dat.) Ali man's name âli lofty, sublime Allah God almak (alır) to buy, get, take alo hello (on the telephone) alt bottom altı six altın gold

altmış sixty aman oh! alas! my goodness! amma but anahtar key anlamak (anlar) to understand anlaşılmak (anlasılır) to be understood, agreed anlatılmak (anlatılır) to be explained anlatmak (anlatır) to explain, recount, make understand anlayış penetration; manner of understanding anlayışlı perceptive anne mother apartiman apartment building ara midst, interval arka back Aralık December aramak (arar) to search for Arap (Arabı) Arab arkadas friend Arnavutköv 'Albanian Village' (a suburb of Istanbul) asağı down at horse ata ancestor

ayak (ayağı) foot

ayrılmak (ayrılır) to depart, go away from

az few, (a) little, insufficient; less

baba father

bacak (bacağı) leg

bahçe garden, yard

bahçeli having a garden

bahsetmek to discuss, talk about (with abl.), to mention

bakmak (bakar) to look, look at (with dat.), look after (with dat.)

bando band (musical)

banka bank

bankacı banker

bankacılık the banking business

bardak (bardağı) drinking glass

baş head

başka another; other than (with abl.)

başlamak (başlar) to start to (with dat.)

Bay Mr.

Bayan Mrs.; Miss

bayat stale

bayram holiday

bazı some (with plural)

beğenmek (beğenir) like, approve, enjoy (trans.)

beklemek (bekler) to await, wait for (with obj. def.)

belki perhaps

belli clear, evident, plain

bembeyaz very white

ben I

beraber together

beri since (with abl.)

beş five

Bey Mr.

beyaz white

Beyoğlu downtown section of Istanbul

bikmak (bikar) to get tired of (with abl.)

biber pepper

bildirilmek (bildirilir) to be announced

bildirmek (bildirir) to inform, announce, cause to know

bile even

bilet ticket

biletçi ticket man

bilinmek (bilinir) to be known

bilmek (bilir) to know

bin thousand

bina building

binmek (biner) (with dat.) to get on (a horse, etc.), to get in (a car, etc.), to board (a ship)

bir one; a, an

birisi someone

birleştirilmek (birleştirilir) to be united

bir şey something

bitirmek (bitirir) to end (trans.)

bitmek (biter) to end (intrans.)

biz we

boş empty

böyle thus, in this fashion

bu this, these

buçuk one half (used only with other numbers)

bulmak (bulur) to find

bulunmak (bulunur) to be found; to be

buluşmak (buluşur) to meet together, to convey (intrans.)

buluşturulmak (buluşturulur) to be caused to meet or get together

bulvar boulevard

bura\* here, this place

büro office

bütün whole, entire, all

büyük big, large, great

büyüklük largeness, bigness, greatness

büyümek (büyür) to grow larger

cadde street, avenue

cami mosque

cep (cebi) pocket

Cuma (günü) Friday

Cumartesi (günü) Saturday

çabuk fast

çalışmak (çalışır) to work, work hard

çarçabuk extremely swift

çarpışmak (çarpışır) to collide

çarpıştırılmak (çarpıştırılır) to be caused to collide

çarpıştırmak (çarpıstırır) to cause to collide

çarpmak (çarpar) to hit, strike against (with dat.)

Çarşamba (günü) Wednesday

çarşı market, bazaar

çay tea

çekmek (çeker) to pull fotoğraf çekmek to take a photograph

çeyrek quarter

çıkış exit; manner of going out

cikmak (cikar) to go out of (with abl.); to go up; to come up to (with dat.); to set forth on (with dat.)

çıplak naked

çiçek flower

çocuk (çocuğu) child

çocukluk childhood; childishness

çok (çoğu) much, many, very

çünkü *because* 

dv<sup>2</sup> also, too, for X's part, in X's turn

dağ mountain

daha more

daima always

dakika minute (time)

defa time, occurrence

değil not (with 'to be')

demek (der) to say, speak (used only with direct quotation)
Demek, gittin. In other words (that is to say), you went.

demir iron

deniz sea, ocean

derhal immediately

ders lesson, class

dış outside

dışarı outside

diğer (the) other

dikkat caution dikkat etmek to be careful (with dat.), to pay attention

dilim slice

dis tooth

doğru right, true, straight; straight toward (with dat.)

doğruluk rightness, straightness

doksan ninety dokuz nine dolar dollar

dolayı because of (with abl.)

dönmek (döner) to turn
(intrans.); to return, go back to
(with dat.)

dört (dördü) four dükkân shop, store

dün yesterday dünya world edebî literary

efendi gentleman, sir

eğer *if* 

Ekim October

ekmek bread, loaf of bread

el hand

elektrik (elektriği) electricity elektriksiz not electrified

elektrikli electrified

elli *fifty* elma *apple* 

emin certain of, sure of (with abl. or dat.)

en (the) most

endişe anxiety endişe etmek to worry

Erdoğan man's name

erkek *male* erken *early* 

eski old

eş wife, husband

et meat

etmek (eder) to do, to make (auxiliary verb)

ev house

ev sahibi house owner; landlord

evvel before (with abl.)

evet yes

evli *married* 

evlilik matrimony

Eylûl September

eyvallah (mild exclamation, Arabic) Ah, by God! So be it!

fabrika factory

Fahrünnisa woman's name

fakat but

fakirlik poverty

fazla more than (with abl.), too much

fena baa

fikir (fikri) idea

fil elephant

filim (filmi) (photographic) film; moving picture

fincan cup

fotoğraf photograph
fotoğrafçı photographer

Fransız French

Fransızca the French language

frenk Frank (i.e. west European)

garaj garage gâvur heathen

gazete newspaper

gazeteci newspaperman

gazetecilik journalism

gece night geç late

geçilmek (geçilir) to be crossed

over

geçmek (geçer) to cross over (with abl., dat., and acc.)

gelişmek (gelişir) to flourish, to develop (intrans.)

geliştirilmek (geliştirilir) to be developed

gelmek (gelir) to come

genç young

genişletilmek (genişletilir) to be widened

gerek right, proper, necessary

getirilmek (getirilir) to be brought

getirmek (getirir) to bring, to import

gıram (or gram) gram

gibi like (postposition)

gidilmek (gidilir) to go (impersonal)

gidiş manner of going

girilmek (girilir) to be entered

giriş entrance; manner of going in

girmek (girer) to go into (with dat.)

gitmek (gider) to go

giyinmek (giyinir) to dress (reflexive)

giymek (giyer) to wear (clothing) göl lake

gönderilmek (gönderilir) to be sent

göndermek (gönderir) to send

göre according to (with dat.)

görmek (görür) to see görücü matchmaker

görünmek (görünür) to be visible, to seem

görüşmek (görüşür) to converse, discuss

görüşülmek (görüşülür) to be discussed

görüştürmek (görüştürür) to cause to converse

görüştürülmek (görüştürülür) to be made to converse with each other

göstermek (gösterir) to display, show (trans.)

göz eye

gözlük eyeglasses

güç difficult

güçlük difficulty

gülmek (güler) to laugh

gümüş silver

gün day

günlük daily

güzel pretty, lovely, nice, fine

güzellik beauty

ha so!

haber news

hafta week

haftalık weekly

hak (hakkı) right, truth; God bunun hakkında concerning this

hakikat (hakikati) fact, reality

hakikaten really

Hakkı man's name

hal (hali) circumstance, situation, condition; (with relative gerund) although

halı rug

hangi which? what?

Hanım Mrs.; Miss

harem women's section of old Turkish house

hasta sick

hatırlamak (hatırlar) to remember

hatırlatmak (hatırlatır) to cause to remember

hava air; weather

havuz pool

hay! hay! (exclamation of enthusiasm)

hayat life

haydi (interjection) Well! Hey! Come on!

hayır no (opposite of yes)

hazır ready, prepared

Haziran June

henüz as yet

hep (hepsi) all

her each, every

hirsiz thief

hiç none; nothing; never, ever (with positive verb) hiç bir not a

hisar fortress, castle

hoş fortunate; pleasing Hoşuna gider. It pleases him. He enjoys it.

hükümet government

ırmak river

ismarlamak (ismarlar) to commend to, order

iç inside

içeri inside

içilmek (içilir) to be drunk (passive of 'to drink')

için for

içirilmek (içirilir) to be caused to drink

içirmek (içirir) to cause to drink

içmek (içer) to drink

ihtiyarlamak (ihtiyarlar) to grow old

iki two

iktisadî economic, economical

ile with

ilk first

inanmak (inanır) to believe (with dat.)

indirilmek (indirilir) to be lowered

indirmek (indirir) to cause to descend; to lower

İngilizce the English language

inmek (iner) to descend from, dismount, get out of (with abl. or dat.)

inşallah if God will; I hope . . .

ise (conditional sign); however, as for

isim(ismi) name

iskemle chair

İsmail man's name

ispirto spirits, alcohol

istasyon station

istemek (ister) to want, wish, desire, need, require

iş matter, work, job, business iş görmek to do work, have a job

iste so, thus, all right, etc.

İtalya Italy

itmek (iter) to push

iyi good

iyileşmek (iyileşir) to grow better, improve (intrans.)

iyilik goodness, the good

Japonya Japan

kaatil murderer

kaç how much? how many?

kaçışmak (kaçışır) (for all) to flee; to run off in different directions

kaçmak (kaçar) to flee

kadar amount; up to (with dat.)

kadın woman

kahvaltı breakfast kahvaltı yapmak to eat breakfast

kahve coffee; coffeehouse

kalem pencil

kalmak (kalır) to stay, remain in (with loc.)

kapalı covered; roofed-over

kapı door

kapici doorkeeper, concièrge

kar snow

kâr profit

kara black

Karaköy a section of downtown Istanbul

karar decision karar vermek (with dat.) to decide

kardeş brother

karı wife

karşı against, opposite

kasaba town

Kasım November

kat (katı) floor, story (of a building)

katil (katli) murder

kedi cat

kelime word

kendi self; own

kere time, occurrence

kılmak (kılır) to make, do (archaic)

kırılmak (kırılır) to be broken; to break (intrans.)

kırk forty

kırmak (kırar) to break (trans.)

kısa short

kısım (kısmı) section, part

kız girl, daughter, maiden, female

kızkardeş sister

kızıl red, scarlet

kızmak (kızar) to become angry

ki that (relative)

kilo kilogram

kilometre kilometer

kim who?

kimse nobody

kira rent kirara vermek to rent (to some one)

kiralık for rent

kişi person

kitap (kitabı) book

kitapçı bookseller

kitapçılık the book business

klinik doctor's office, clinic

koca husband

kol arm

kolay easy

konuşmak (konuşur) to talk, converse

korkmak (korkar) to be afraid of (with abl.)

koşmak (koşar) to run

koymak (koyar) to put, place (with dative of the place into which the object is put) köpek dog körfez gulf köy village

kul slave, subject; worshiper

kulak *ear* 

kullanılmak (kullanır) to be used

kuruş kuruş (piaster, 1/100 of a Turkish Lira: unit of money)

kutu box

küçük small, little

küçülmek (küçülür) to grow smaller

kütüphane library

-l V<sup>2</sup> (See ile.)

lâle tulip

lamba lamp, light bulb; radio tube

lâzım necessary

limon lemon

limonlu with lemon

lira lira (pound: unit of money)

lisan language, tongue

lokanta restaurant

Londra London

lûtfen please

Lübnan the Lebanon

Lübnanî Lebanese

m V<sup>4</sup> (spoken question mark)

maalesef unfortunately

marmara marble

Mart March

maşallah my goodness! (Arabic: what God wills)

Mayıs May

mecburiyet necessity, obligation

mecmua magazine

Mehmet (Mehmedi) man's name (Arabic Muhammad)

Mehmetçik Turkey's G.I. Joe, Tommy Atkins

mektep (mektebi) school

mektup (mektubu) letter

merhaba hello (informal greeting)

metre meter

mevcut extant

mevki class, rank

meyva fruit

Mihri woman's name

millî national

milyar billion

milyon million

minare minaret

Mösyö Monsieur

muallim teacher

muallimlik pedagogy

mutlaka positively

müsaade permission

namaz kılmak to perform the formal Moslem prayer ritual

nasil? how? what sort of?

nazaran in view of, according to (with dat.)

nazır overlooking, looking out upon (with dat.)

ne? what?

ne (exclamatory) how very!

ne...ne (negative) neither...
nor. (with positive or negative
verb)

nere\*? where? what place?

netice result, consequence

ne zaman? when? what time? nicin (ne icin)? why? Nilüfer water lily; woman's name Nisan April not grade, mark numara grade, mark o he, she, it; that, those (demonstrative) Ocak January oda room oğul (oğlu) son ok arrow okul school okumak (okur) to read, to study okunmak (okunur) to be read olmak (olur) to become, happen olunmak (olunur) to be on ten onlar thev ora\* there, that place otel hotel otobüs bus otomobil automobile oturmak (oturur) to sit, dwell oturtmak (oturur) to cause to sit or dwell oturtulmak (oturtulur) to be caused to sit or dwell otuz thirty oynamak (oynar) to play öbür the other öbür gün the day after tomorrow öğle noon öğle yemeği noon meal

öğrenmek (öğrenir) to learn öğretmek (öğretir) to teach öğretmen teacher ölmek (ölür) to die ön front öyle thus, in that fashion pahali expensive para money paralı rich parasız moneyless parasızlık poverty parça part pasaport passport Pazar (günü) Sunday Pazartesi (günü) Monday pek very, very much pencere window Persembe günü Thursdav peynir cheese pisirmek (pişirir) to cook (trans.) polis police portakal orange postaci mailman pul stamp (postage, etc.) radvo radio rağmen despite (with dat.) randevu appointment renk (rengi) color resmen officially rica request Rus Russian saat (saati) hour, time; watch, clock sabah morning sac hair

öğrenci pupil

sahip (sahibi) owner, master

Sait (Saidi) man's name

sakın in any case, at any cost, but

Salı (günü) Tuesday

sanat (sanati) art, craft

saniye second (time)

satılık for sale

satın almak to buy

satmak (satar) to sell

sebep (sebebi) reason, cause

sekiz eight

seksen eighty

selâmlık men's section of old Turkish house

Selim man's name

Selma woman's name

sen you (familiar singular)

sene year

sevinmek (sevinir) to be or become happy

sevmek (sever) to like; to love

seyahat travel, trip

seyahat etmek to travel

sicak hot

sıra line, rank, file

sinema movie house

siyah black

siz you (polite singular, normal plural)

sokak (sokağı) street

son last

sonra after (with abl.)

sormak (sorar) to ask Mehmet bana onu sordu. Mehmet asked me (about) it. söylemek (söyler) to speak, say, tell (not used with direct quotations: see demek)

söylenmek to be said

söz word; promise

sözcü speaker

su water

Suat (Suati) woman's or man's

susturmak (susturur) to cause to be silent

susuz waterless

susuzluk aridity

süt milk

sütlü with milk

Süheylâ woman's name

Şam Damascus

Şamî Damascene

şair *poet* 

şehir (şehri) city

şeker sugar; candy

şekerli with sugar

şekersiz without sugar

şey thing; uh- uh- ahem . . . (said when one hesitates in speech)

şikâyet complaint şikâyet etmek to complain

şimdi now

şimdilik for the present

şirket company, firm (business)

şöyle thus; in that fashion; as follows

şu that, those (demonstrative); at some distance away; which follow(s)

Şubat February

Taksim a downtown section of Istanbul

talebe student

tane counting word

taraf side; part; (used to express

agent with passive)

tarif etmek to describe, define

taş stone

telefon etmek to telephone

Temmuz July

tercih etmek to prefer (with obj.

def.)

teşekkür etmek to thank

tiyatro theater

top ball, sphere

tramvay streetcar

tren train

tutmak (tutar) to grasp, hold,

catch

tuz salt

tuzluk saltcellar

tuzluluk saltiness

tuzsuz salt free

tuzsuzluk saltlessness

Türk Turk: Turkish

Türkçe the Turkish language

Türkiye Turkey

türlü fashion

tütün tohacco

tütüncü tobacconist

ucuz cheap, inexpensive

ucak airplane

ufak small

unutmak (unutur) to forget

uzun long, tall

üc three

ümit (ümidi) hope

üniversite university

üst top

üzere (üzre) over, upon, on the point of, for the purpose of

vapur steamer, ferry

var *extant* 

vaz geçmek to change one's mind

about (with abl.)

ve and

verilmek (verilir) to be given

vermek (verir) to give to (with dat. or acc.)

ya and as for . . .

ya...ya either...or

yağ grease, (cooking) fat;

(vegetable) oil

yağmak (yağar) to fall as

precipitation

yağmur *rain* 

yağmurlu rainy

yalan lie, falsehood

yalnız only, alone

yan *side* 

yani that is, i.e., I mean

yapılmak (yapılır) to be made

yapmak (yapar) to make, do

yaramazlık mischief

yardım help

yarım one half (not used with

other numbers)

yaş age (of humans)

yaşlı old (of humans)

yatak bed

yavaş *slowly* 

yazı writing, article

yazıcı secretary (usually in the

armed forces)

yazık a pity, too bad
yazmak (yazar) to write
yedi seven
yemek (yer) to eat
yemek food, meal yemek yemek
to eat a meal
yeni new
yer place, location
yetmiş seventy
yıkamak (yıkar) to wash (trans.)
yıkanmak (yıkanır) to wash
(reflexive)
yıl year
yılmak (yılar) to flinch

yine again

yok non-extant
yol road, voyage
yukarı up
yumuşak soft
yüksek high, tall
yükselmek (yükselir) to grow
higher
yüz face; hundred
yüzmek (yüzer) to swim
zaman time bazı zaman sometimes bir zamanlar sometimes
zaten as a matter of fact, in
reality, at any rate
zengin wealthy
zira because

# **ELEMENTARY TURKISH**

# **Lewis V. Thomas**

# Revised and Edited by Norman Itzkowitz

Turkish is the primary language of some thirty million people. Anyone concerned with current social, political and cultural developments in Turkey knows that a practical understanding of the basic patterns of modern Turkish is an invaluable skill that until now has been difficult to attain without extensive training.

This superb grammar and exercise text, used successfully for years at Princeton University, enables English-speaking students—in and out of the classroom—to gain a quick and thorough understanding of modern Turkish. In a carefully arranged sequence of 23 lessons, Lewis V. Thomas, late Professor of Oriental Studies at Princeton, presents thorough coverage that allows the student to begin to use the basic patterns of modern Turkish without time-consuming and expensive private instruction.

The method of instruction was devised after an extensive analysis of results in Princeton classrooms, and relies on exercises at the end of each lesson to test the student's grasp of the material. Beginning with the alphabet and numbers, Professor Thomas offers clear, concise coverage of articles, adjectives and nouns, common infinitives, personal pronouns, and elementary verbs. As the student's comprehension of basic elements develops, further lessons deal with more complicated subjects such as the possessive construction, past general verbs, postpositions, the partitive, progressive verb forms, and abbreviating verb forms. A complete Turkish-English glossary translates new vocabulary occurring in the exercises.

Norman Itzkowitz, Professor of Near Eastern Studies at Princeton University, has skillfully made the necessary revisions and additions to complete Professor Thomas' work. For anyone who needs to communicate in this important and influential language, Professor Thomas' proven course, now in an inexpensive paperback edition, is the most effective method available.

Unabridged, slightly corrected Dover (1986) republication of the first edition published by Harvard University Press, 1967. Glossary. 192pp. 5% × 8%. Paperbound.

See every Dover book in print at www.doverpublications.com

IZBN 0-486-52064-4



50895

\$8.95 IN USA \$13.50 IN CANADA